

User Guide

2015-04-02

All trademarks used in this document are the property of their respective owners. Turn-Key Systems states that the names are used to the benefit of the trademark owner with no intention of infringement of the trademark.

1. Introduction to TopLeaf

This User Guide introduces the TopLeaf system, describes its features in detail, and sets out the steps you need to set up a document and produce your desired output. See [Section 1.2](#) for a complete description of the available documentation.

1.1 What is TopLeaf?

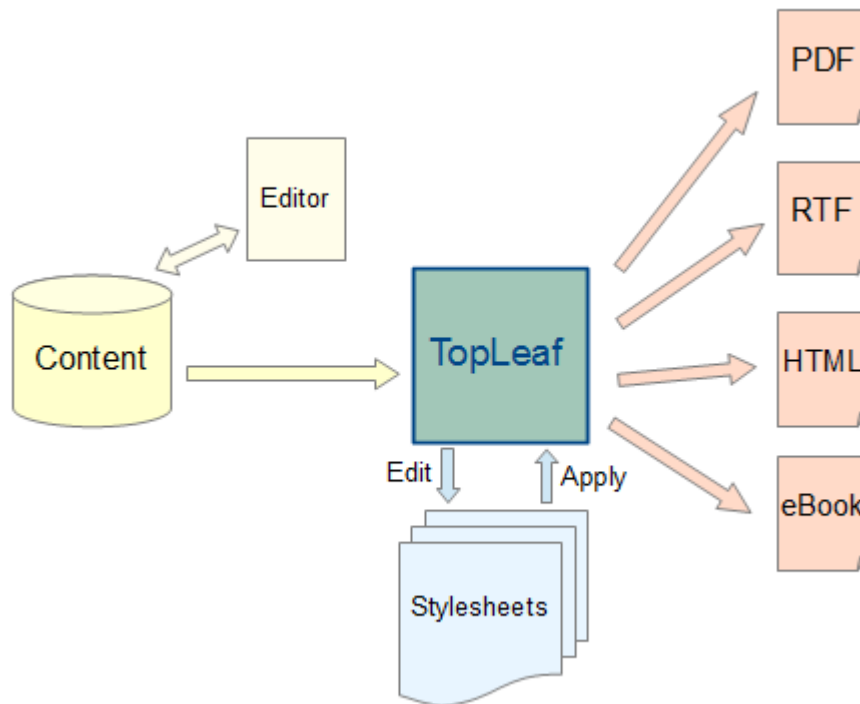
TopLeaf is an XML or SGML rendering system for the production of high quality PDF and hard copy output. It allows you to create **stylesheets** that apply consistent formatting to your content. The same stylesheets used to create paginated output can also be used to create corresponding RTF and HTML output.

TopLeaf can be used for **looseleaf** publications to automatically produce only those pages that have changed between two versions of a document.

TopLeaf comes in two forms:

- a desktop workstation;
- a server based system run directly from third party applications such as data repositories.

1.1.1 Where does TopLeaf fit into your document production system?



TopLeaf uses content that you create with an XML editor and store in a content management system or as ordinary files. The content is transformed and formatted into output for publication.

TopLeaf implements the concept of **single source** publishing. The content does not contain any formatting information. The final format is applied by a **stylesheet** that defines rules about what each part of the output should look like. The advantages of this approach are:

- The output format is consistent, since the same rules are applied to all content.
- The same content can be used to produce a different format simply by using a different stylesheet.

TopLeaf includes a set of stylesheet management tools that simplify the process of creating and testing stylesheets.

1.2 Structure of the documentation

TopLeaf documentation consists of the following volumes:

- this *User Guide* — a general introduction to TopLeaf;
- the *Page Layout Guide* — describes how to control the way formatted output is positioned on the page;
- the *Mapping Guide* — instructions on how to control the appearance of formatted output;
- the *TopLeaf API Manual* — explains how the API enables TopLeaf to be driven by third party applications, and provides a full explanation of all available function calls. Note that you need to have purchased an API licence for this facility to be available.

Documentation for older versions of TopLeaf can be downloaded from <http://www.turnkey.com.au/tksweb/PDFs/TL7LG.pdf>.

1.3 Structure of this volume

The TopLeaf User Guide contains the following chapters:

- **Chapter 2** is a quick introduction to TopLeaf.
- **Chapter 3** describes the typesetting features provided by TopLeaf.
- **Chapter 4** describes how to set up and use the TopLeaf work area.
- **Chapter 5** describes the options for creating PDF renditions of your data.
- **Chapter 6** describes how you can automatically create tables of contents, indexes and other generated material.
- **Chapter 7** discusses HTML and RTF output from TopLeaf.
- **Chapter 8** deals with looseleaf publishing.
- **Chapter 9** describes the extensions available for processing DITA content.
- **Chapter 10** describes the main TopLeaf window and toolbars.

1.4 Assumed knowledge and conventions

This documentation assumes that you have a working knowledge of XML syntax and structure.

References to characters use the standard “U+NNNN” notation for [Unicode](#) code points. The code point value is always expressed as 4 hexadecimal values.

The notation File » Open... means to select the File menu and click on the Open... item.

2. Quick start guide

If you are new to TopLeaf or to XML typesetting the following will give you an introduction to the system.

2.1 Installing TopLeaf

If you haven't already installed TopLeaf, you can download the current version from http://www.turnkey.com.au/tksweb/topleaf_eval.html. Run the downloaded file to install TopLeaf.

When you first run Toplevel it will request a licence key. The download page has a form you can fill in to request an evaluation licence key. The evaluation licence allows you to try out all of the features of the system. Output created with an evaluation licence will have a watermark applied to it.

A Java™ runtime must be installed in order to use TopLeaf. The location of the Java runtime is set in the TopLeaf workstation **Preferences dialog**. If you don't have a Java runtime you can download one from <http://www.java.com>.

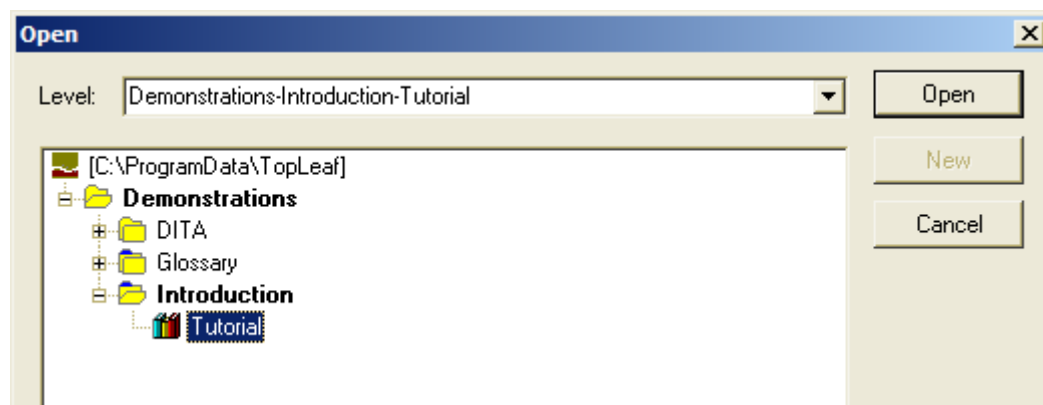
If you use EPS (Encapsulated PostScript®) images you will need to install GhostScript. See **Section 12.1** for more information.

2.2 Creating a PDF

When you start TopLeaf the workstation interface window will appear. The following will guide you through the process of creating a PDF using the menu interface. For example, **File » Open...** means to select the **File** menu and click on the **Open...** item.

Note that menu commands usually have equivalent toolbar buttons or keyboard shortcuts. See **Chapter 10** for a complete description of the interface.

First select **File » Open...** to display the following dialog:




Click the “+” icons to open the **Demonstrations** and **Introduction** levels and click on **Tutorial** to select it as shown above. In TopLeaf terminology this is called a **partition**. Click the **Open** button to open it.

The title bar of the main window will now show the name of the partition that is open. Select **Commands » Compose** to create a rendition of the document contained in the partition. When composition is complete the first page of the document will appear in the preview pane.

Select **Page » Zoom** to choose how much of each page is displayed. You can also right-click in the preview pane to select the zoom.

You can navigate through the preview pages in a number of ways:

- Use the **Page Up** and **Page Down** keys to move to the next or previous page.
- Use the buttons on the Preview toolbar: 
- Use the items in the **Page** menu.
- Expand the **Pages** item in the left-hand pane and double-click a page.

Now select **File » Create PDF...**. Press **OK** on the first dialog that opens to use the default options and choose a location to store the PDF file in the second.

After the PDF is created it should open automatically in a PDF viewer application (such as [Adobe® Reader®](#)). If it does not open, check that you have a suitable application installed and that it is associated with the “.pdf” file extension in Windows.

2.3 Working with stylesheets

The PDF you created in the previous step is a tutorial that will introduce you to basic stylesheet concepts. It is based on the partition that you used to create it.

Warning:

Experimenting with the tutorial partition is a good way to learn how stylesheets work. However, note that the TopLeaf installer replaces files in the Demonstrations folder, so any stylesheet changes you make will be lost if you install a new version.

After completing the tutorial you can find a description of how TopLeaf stylesheets work in [Chapter 3](#).

Once you are familiar with the basics, you will want to start working with your own content. The way to get started depends on the sort of content you have. The following describes the process for different types of data.

2.3.1 Getting started with DITA

DITA (Darwin Information Typing Architecture) is a standard for representing topic-based documents in XML. As well as a schema it defines how specific tags should be processed during publishing.

If your content conforms to the DITA specification you can make use of the resources provided with TopLeaf to accelerate your stylesheet development. The way to use these resources depends on the publishing environment you are using. There is a supplement to this documentation called the [TopLeaf for DITA Guide](#) located at http://www.turnkey.com.au/tksweb/xmtp/webhelp_out/guide.html that describes the available options.

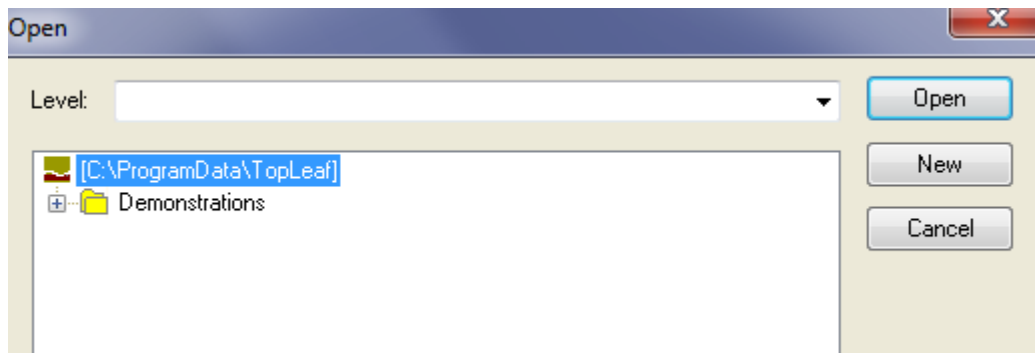
See [Chapter 9](#) for information about the DITA-specific facilities in TopLeaf. It also describes the DITA stylesheets which you can use as a starting point for your own stylesheet development.

2.3.2 Getting started with other XML

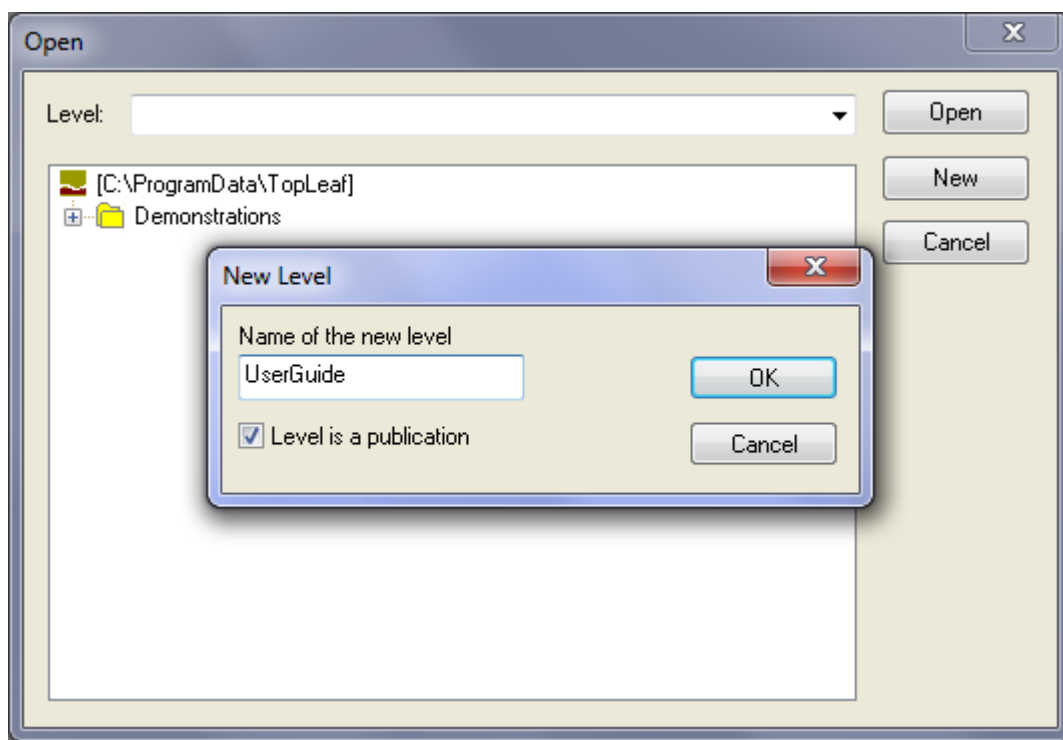
TopLeaf can be used to format any well-formed XML content. The XML does not need to be valid with respect to a specific DTD or schema.

The following will guide you through the process of creating an initial stylesheet from some content. It assumes that the content is available on the local file system. If your content is stored in a content management system you will need to extract a copy to the file system. If it refers to other resources (such as images) make sure these are copied as well.

Select File » Open... to display the Open dialog.

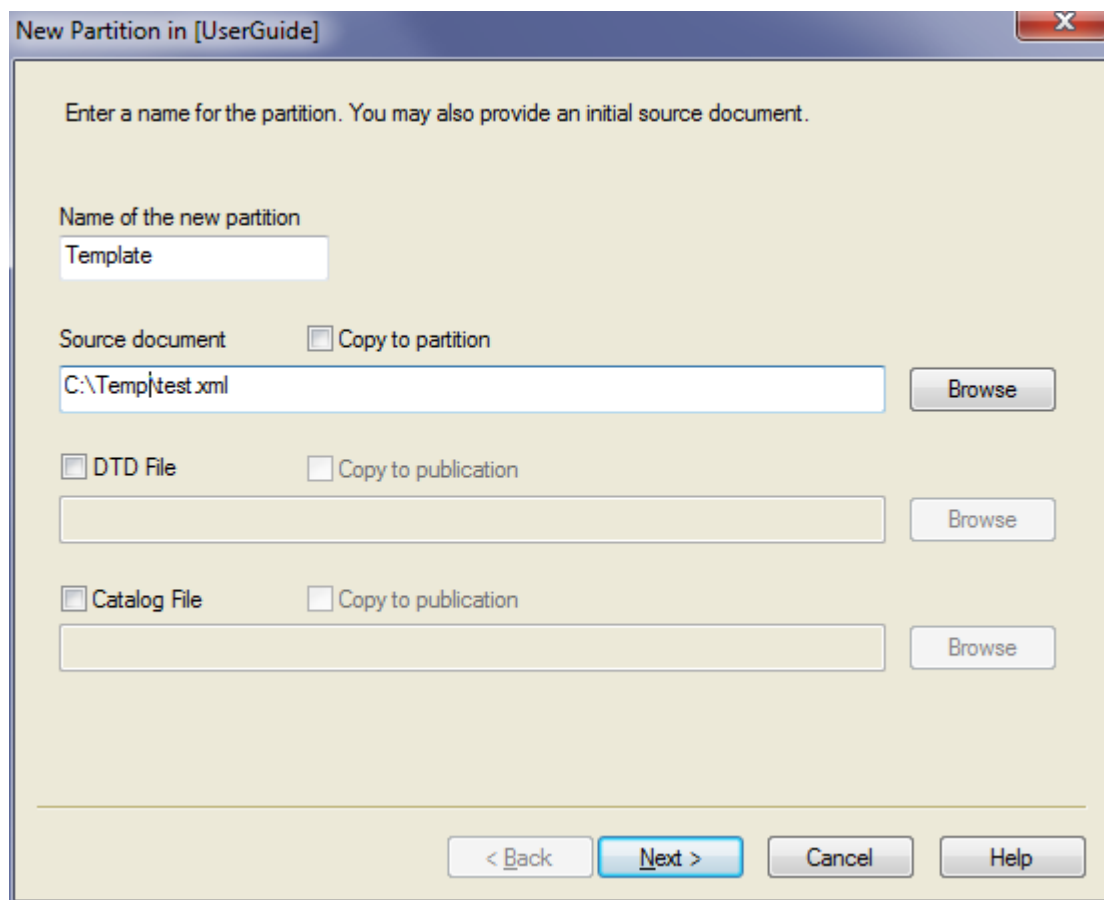


Select the top-level item as shown above and press the **New** button. The New Level dialog will appear.



Enter a name and make sure that the Level is a publication box is checked. In TopLeaf terminology a **publication** stores the information associated with a stylesheet, so you will need to create a separate publication for each stylesheet you create.

When you press OK you will see the following dialog:



New Partition in [UserGuide]

Enter a name for the partition. You may also provide an initial source document.

Name of the new partition
Template

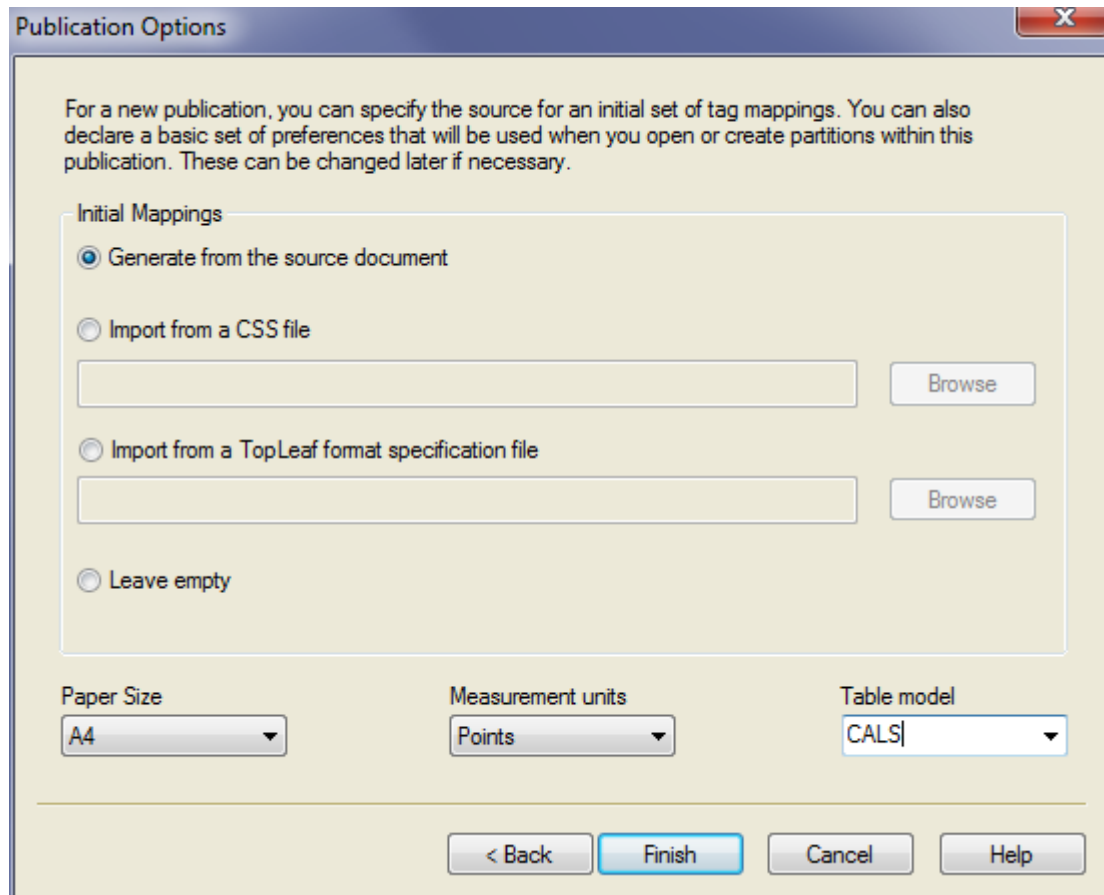
Source document ☐ Copy to partition
C:\Temp\test.xml Browse

☐ DTD File ☐ Copy to publication
Browse

☐ Catalog File ☐ Copy to publication
Browse

< Back Next > Cancel Help

A publication contains one or more partitions, each defining its own content. By convention the first partition is called **Template**, but you may enter any appropriate name. Enter the path to the source document file. If your content consists of multiple files, select the “main” file that refers to all of the others. Press **Next** to continue.



You can use the default values on the Publication Options dialog. TopLeaf will examine your source document and try to guess the type of table markup used. If you are unsure of the correct model to use, select **Unknown**. The publication options for your stylesheet can be changed later if necessary.

Note:

By default TopLeaf examines the source document and tries to create an appropriate set of initial mappings. If you have a CSS stylesheet for formatting your XML you may get a better result by choosing [Import from a CSS file](#).

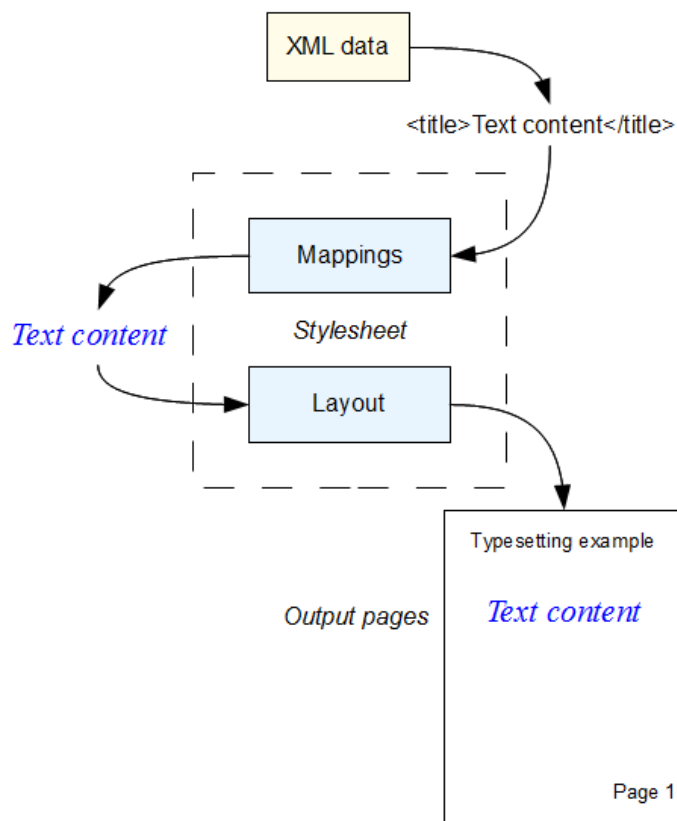
After you press Finish the new partition will be selected in the Open dialog. Press the Open button to open the partition and start working with it.

Select Commands » Compose to render the document using the default layout and the initial mappings. See [Chapter 3](#) for information on how you can change the appearance of the rendered output.

3. Typesetting concepts

This is a description of how TopLeaf assembles formatted content and the type of structures you can define in your stylesheet.

The process of applying a stylesheet is represented in the following diagram.



In summary:

- The appearance of the content (text and images) is controlled by the mappings.
- The layout defines where the content appears in the output.
- Additional content, such as headers and footers, can be created by the stylesheet.

3.1 Mapping basics

A stylesheet defines a number of mappings. These mappings are applied when certain events occur while processing the input. Examples of events are:

- When a tag is read from the content.
- When a header or footer is placed on the page.
- When a footnote is generated.

Each mapping defines a number of properties that affect the appearance of the following content. For example, a mapping could define the font and size for the following text.

See the [Mapping Guide](#) for a complete description of the different types of mappings and their properties.

3.2 Layout basics

A layout defines a number of rectangular areas on the page into which content is assembled. The boundaries of these areas control the arrangement of content as described in [Section 3.3](#).

The layout defines a number of different formats or **page types**. Each page type can define the number of columns on the page, page orientation, the position of headers and footers and so on. TopLeaf allows you to use multiple page types on an output page, so for example it is possible to have both single and double column material on a page.

Page types are selected by setting a mapping property.

For more information, see the [Layout Editor Manual](#).

3.3 Content assembly

The material that forms the output is composed of text and images. Together these are referred to as the **content** of the document.

Content is assembled into lines that must fit within the boundaries of an area defined by the layout. The area defines a **column** with a left and right edge. The distance between the left and right edges, or **column width**, determines the maximum length of a line of content.

Once a line is too long to fit in the column the **line breaking rules** are applied to find a place where a new line can start.

When no more material can fit on the current page, a new page is started. It is possible to control where a page break occurs by specifying that certain material must always appear on the same page. In TopLeaf this is referred to as a content **binding**.

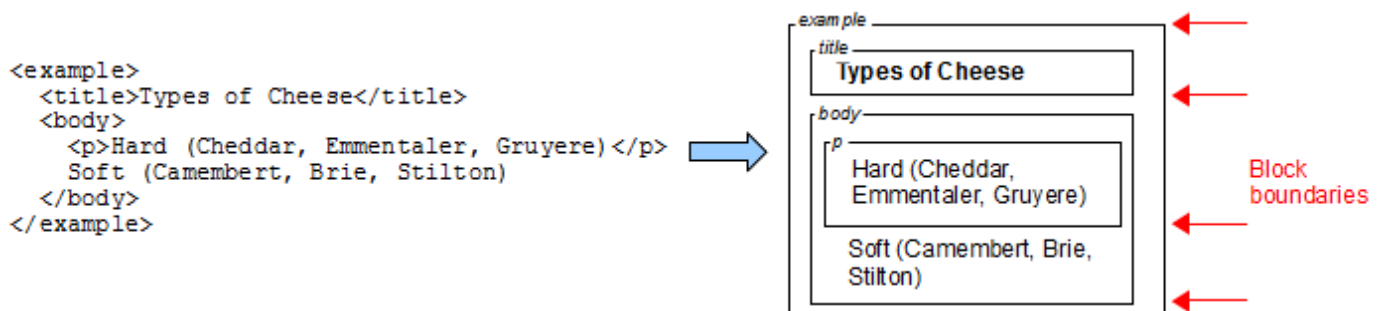
3.3.1 Blocks and paragraphs

A mapping that forces its content to start a new line establishes a new **block** of content. Since these blocks are associated with tags in the input, the blocks are nested together in a way that mirrors the XML hierarchy.

The start or end of a block creates a **block boundary**. A single block boundary can be caused by the start and/or end of a number of different blocks.

All of the content between two block boundaries is referred to as a **paragraph**. Certain properties, such as horizontal alignment and inter-word spacing are applied to all of the content in a paragraph.

In the following example the elements all form blocks. The blocks are represented as rectangles. This results in four block boundaries and three paragraphs.



Note that the final content is not enclosed by an element that creates a block, but it still creates a paragraph because it is between two block boundaries.

3.3.2 Margins and indents

The horizontal position of text is controlled by two mapping properties:

- a **margin** affects the position of a whole paragraph.
- an **indent** affects the position of a single line.

Margins and indents are set in the [Paragraph tab](#) of a mapping.

Margins

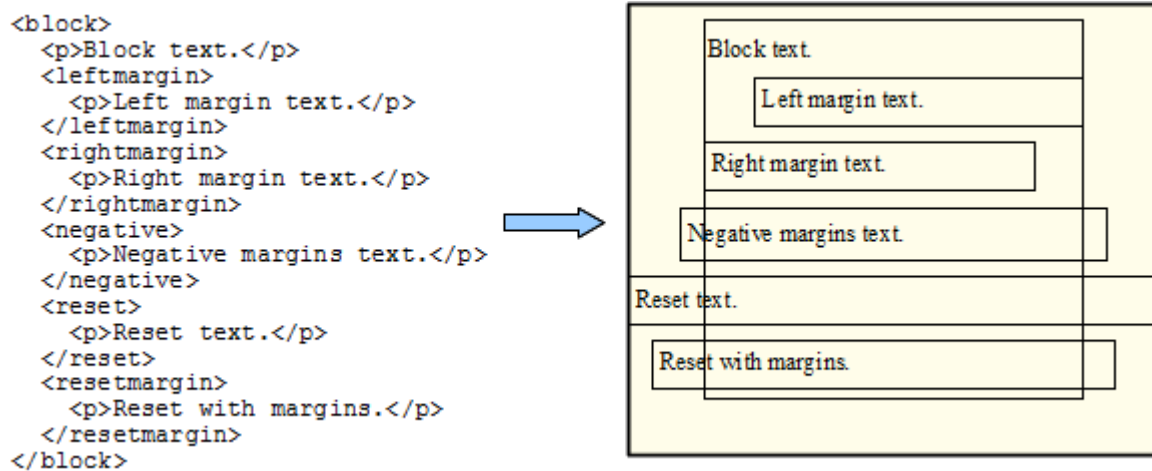
Each paragraph has a left and right margin property. These properties define the left and right edges of the paragraph relative to the edges of the column. The left and right margins are set independently.

A margin property is set for a block and applies to all paragraphs contained in that block. The effective margin value for a paragraph is the sum of all of the margin properties for the enclosing blocks.

A margin property can be set to a negative value to move the paragraph edge closer to the column edge. However, this cannot be used to make the effective value negative, since that would allow the content to go outside the column. An attempt to do this will cause a typesetting error.

A mapping can **reset** the margins to ignore margin settings from enclosing blocks. This affects both the left and right margins.

The following diagram illustrates this process:



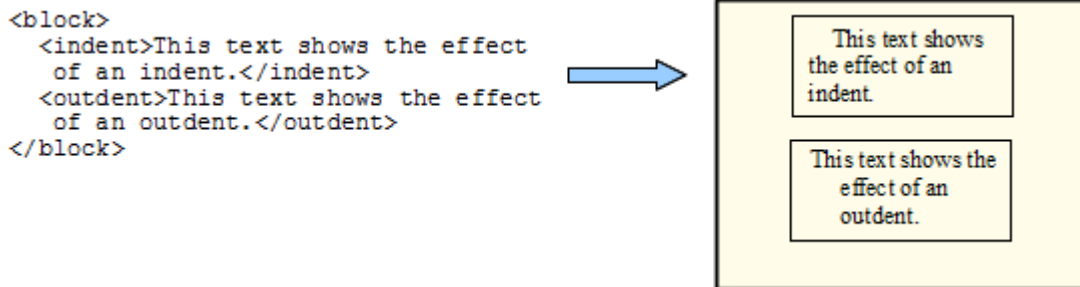
The column boundaries are shown by the thick-bordered rectangle. The mappings for the elements shown do the following:

- The **block** mapping sets left and right margins.
- The **leftmargin** mapping sets a left margin. The margin value is added to the one set by the **block** mapping.
- The **rightmargin** mapping sets a right margin.
- The **negative** mapping sets negative values for both the left and right margins. This has the effect of allowing the content to move outside the boundaries defined by the **block** mapping.
- The **reset** mapping resets the margins without setting any margins of its own. This allows the content to extend to the full column width.
- The **resetmargin** mapping also resets the margins and sets its own left and right margins.

First/left indent

The first/left indent only applies to the first line of a paragraph and affects its starting point relative to the effective left margin. The indent value is set by the block that contains the paragraph. It is not affected by the settings of other blocks.

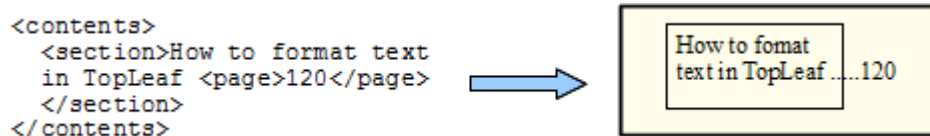
A positive value moves the starting point of the line to the left. A negative value moves the starting point to the right. This produces what is often called an “outdent” or “hanging indent”. The following diagram illustrates this:



Last/right indent

The last/right indent applies to the last line of the paragraph. Unlike the first/left indent, it is always a positive value, and specifies how far the last line can extend beyond the effective right margin.


This is often used in conjunction with an effect that uses all the available space on the last line, such as a space or dot fill. In the following illustration the mapping for **section** sets a last/right indent, and a dot fill is generated by the mapping for **page**.



3.3.3 Images

To insert an image into the output there must be a tag or custom marker in the input stream with an attribute containing the location of the image file. The **Image tab** of the mapping is used to name the attribute and set properties for displaying the image.

Images are treated the same way as text characters. When text and images appear in the same line they all share a common **baseline**. In the following illustration the baseline is shown in red:

Press the open button  to proceed

See **Chapter 12** for some additional information about processing images using the **EPS**, **PDF** and **SVG** formats.

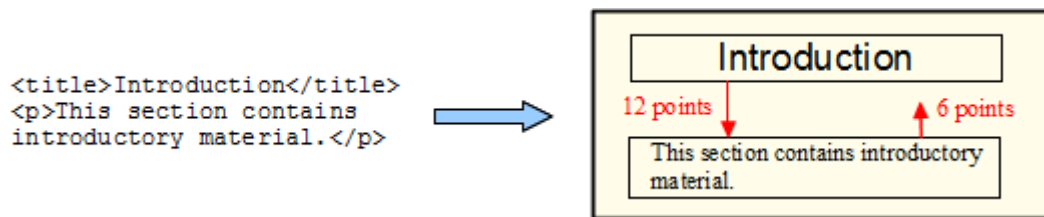
3.3.4 Vertical spacing

The default behavior of TopLeaf is to only include vertical space between paragraphs when it is required. Space can be discarded in the following situations:

- at the top or bottom of a page, or the top or bottom of a column in a multi-column layout.
- where multiple spaces are present at a block boundary all but the largest is discarded.

The second case occurs because the vertical space at a block boundary consists of all of the *space below* properties of the blocks that end there, plus the *space above* properties of the blocks that begin there.

The following diagram illustrates this process:



The **t**itle mapping defines a space below of 12 points, while the **p** mapping has a space above of 6 points. The smaller space is discarded, so the actual space between the two paragraphs is 12 points.

There are mapping properties that can be set to prevent the space from being discarded. See the [mapping paragraph properties](#) for more information.

3.3.5 Leading

Leading is defined as the distance between the baselines of successive lines of type. For example, if a **font style** declares a 10 point font size with a 10 point font leading, then successive baselines will be 10 points apart. With a 12 point font leading, the baselines will be 12 points apart. If additional vertical space is inserted between paragraphs, the distance between successive baselines is equal to the size of the **inter-paragraph** space *plus* the current **font leading**.

3.3.6 Binding

Mappings can be used to create a **binding** between some lines of content so that they will appear together in the output. This concept is referred to as *keep together* in some rendering systems.

Lines that are bound together cannot appear on different pages, or in different columns in a multi-column layout. A common use for binding is to ensure that a title appears on the same page as the material it introduces.

Binding should be defined only when necessary. If the amount of content bound together exceeds the depth of the area defined by the layout an error may occur, and the output format may be compromised.

A binding can be *explicitly* created by a mapping, or it can be *implicitly* created by a typesetting structure or constraint.

Explicit binds

An explicit bind can be created by a block mapping. The types of binds are:

- *bind to following* creates a bind between content at the end of one block and the following paragraph;
- *bind to previous* creates a bind between content at the start of a block and the previous paragraph;
- *bind element content* creates a bind between all content enclosed by the current element.

Note that a bind between paragraphs only ensures that the start and end of the two paragraphs will appear together. It is still possible for a break to occur in either paragraph. Breaks within paragraphs are controlled by the widow and orphan setting discussed below.

Implicit binds

An implicit bind can be created for:

- content within a **box** with a style that does not set the “breakable” property;
- content within a **table** row if the table style does not allow row splitting;
- content within a **page segment** that does not exceed a specified **minimum depth**;

- the last row in a table header, so that it appears with the first row of the table body;
- lines in a paragraph to satisfy widow and orphan constraints (see below).

In typesetting terminology, **widows** and **orphans** are lines in a larger paragraph that appear by themselves at the top or bottom of a page or column, and are generally considered to be undesirable. One of the **mapping properties** controls the minimum number of lines that are allowed to appear in these contexts.

For example, if a minimum of 2 lines is allowed at the bottom of a page, then there is an implicit bind placed between the first 2 lines of each paragraph. Note that this will have no effect on paragraphs that consist of a single line.

Segment binding

A *bind to following* defined at an **internal boundary** creates a bind between the content at the end of one segment and the content at the beginning of the following segment. A *bind to previous* defined at an internal boundary creates a bind between the content at the beginning of one segment and the content at the end of the previous segment. A content bind is automatically cancelled if an internal boundary is declared within the scope of *bound element content*.

Image scaling

In some cases it may be necessary to reduce the size of images in order to place bound content. See the section on **image scaling** in the *Mapping Guide* for more information.

3.3.7 Paragraph merging

Paragraph merging allows block boundaries to be discarded so that the content of two adjacent paragraphs is joined into a single paragraph. A mapping indicates that this should occur by setting the **merge with following paragraph** property.

In the following example all of the mappings create blocks. The **sect** mapping creates a merge with the following block, so the content of the next **page** element is in the same paragraph. The **page** mapping inserts a dot fill before its content.

```
<contents>
  <sect>XML authoring</sect>
  <page>10</page>
  <page>13</page>
  <sect>Rendering</sect>
  <sect>Typesetting</sect>
  <page>20</page>
</contents>
```



XML authoring	10
.....	13
Rendering	
Typesetting	20

A mapping can indicate that it will not participate in a merge even if one is requested by the preceding block. This is done by setting the **disable merge with previous** property. In the above example, the **sect** mapping sets this property, so the “Rendering” and “Typesetting” paragraphs do not merge.

3.3.8 Labels

A **label** is a piece of content that appears at the start of a paragraph and spaced so that it lines up with similar labels in the same column. Labels are most often used for bullets or numbers at the start of list items.

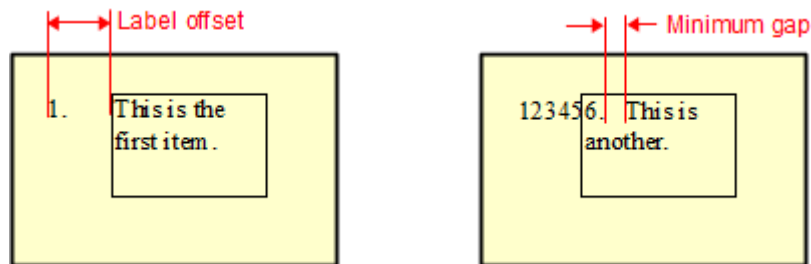
A label is treated as a block mapping that **merges** with the following paragraph.

The position of the label content and the content after it are controlled by the following mapping properties:

- The **label offset** is the distance from the start of the label content to the current left margin. It must be a positive value.
- The **minimum gap** is the minimum distance from the end of the label to the start of the

content after it. If the label is wider than the label offset this can be used to visually separate it from the paragraph content.

These values are illustrated below.



The default positioning of a label places it on the same baseline as the first line of content. The **label style** can be set to “dropped” to make the paragraph content flow around it. The following is a comparison of the two styles, with normal on the left and dropped on the right:

A long time ago in a galaxy far, far away. **A** long time ago in a galaxy far, far away.

3.3.9 Language support

A number of aspects of content assembly can be affected by the language in which the content is expressed:

- The direction of the content flow (left-to-right or right-to-left).
- The position of line breaks.
- The acceptable hyphenation points in words.

TopLeaf will detect and process any **xml:lang** attributes in the content and use them to determine the appropriate language. A language set in this way will only affect the content within the element containing the attribute.

It is also possible to change the language by calling the **text-properties** command in a mapping.

3.3.10 Line breaking

The positions where a content line can break depend on the language being used.

For European languages, content lines usually break between words. Words are separated either by white space characters (space, tab, line feed, etc.) or by one of the character specified as word break characters. By default the only word break character is the hyphen (U+002D). The set of word break characters can be changed in a mapping by calling the **text-properties** command.

Additional language specific line breaking rules are applied when processing Chinese, Japanese, Korean and Arabic content. For more information see [Section 11.2.16](#).

Lines can also be broken by using hyphenation as described in [Section 3.6](#).

3.3.11 Page assembly

TopLeaf assembles content as a single column of data until it reaches a point where the layout can change, such as a page break or a switch between one-column and two-column material.

This design affects the rendering of a document in the following ways:

- Data cannot flow to a format with a different column width unless the mappings force a new

page type to be selected. For example, a chapter cannot start with a single-column layout and switch to double-column on the next page without a tag in the data to force the change.

- It isn't possible to find or set information about the current page (such as the page number) in a mapping since the content may be processed in the context of a different page to the one on which it finally appears.
- Setting a variable to appear in a header or footer can cause unexpected results for the same reason.

To avoid problems with variables that depend on or affect the page context, you can use the following techniques:

- Force a **new page** in the mapping. This means that the mapping will be processed in the context of the new page.
- Information relating to a page can be viewed and changed safely in a **header or footer mapping**, since these will always return information about the page on which they appear.

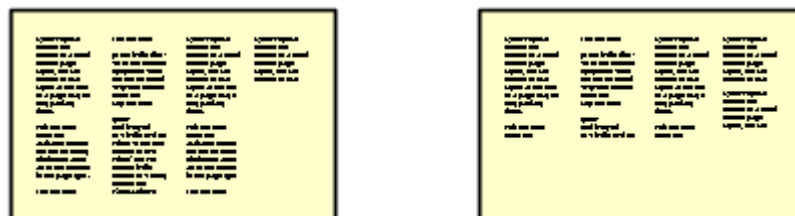
If you are maintaining a variable for the number of pages, the recommended place to increment it is in the **\$headfoot** mapping.

Data telltales provide a reliable means of extracting data from the page to display in headers and footers.

3.3.12 Column balancing

When TopLeaf renders the content of a multi-column page layout, the columns of that layout at the end of a page or section may be only partially filled. Column balancing distributes the content across all columns, reducing the vertical space used by the content.

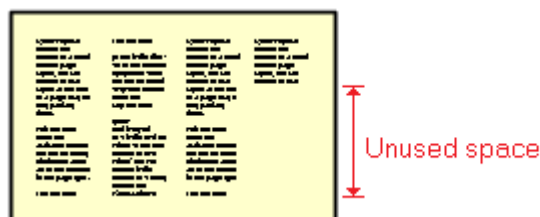
The following diagram illustrates the two styles. Column balancing is disabled for the left sample and enabled on the right.



In some cases it will not be possible to make all columns equal because of **binding** constraints.

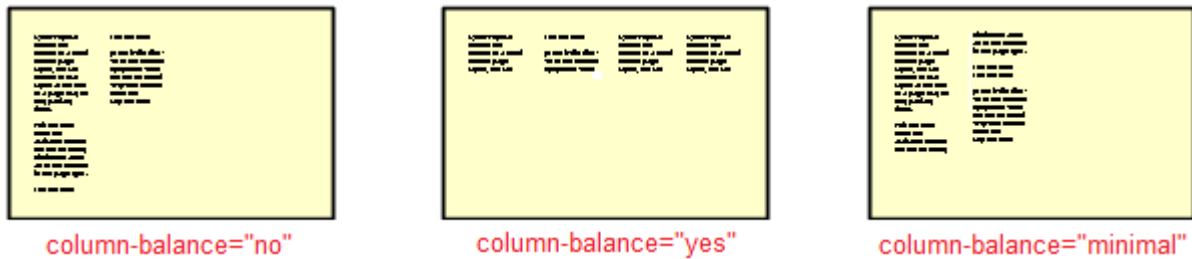
The format options define the **default column balancing mode** applied to all multi-column page layouts. You can **override the default** with a mapping or change the column balancing mode for **individual cases**.

When column balancing is enabled a **threshold** measurement can be set to prevent it from being applied when the last column is nearly filled. The amount of unused space is determined as shown in the following diagram:



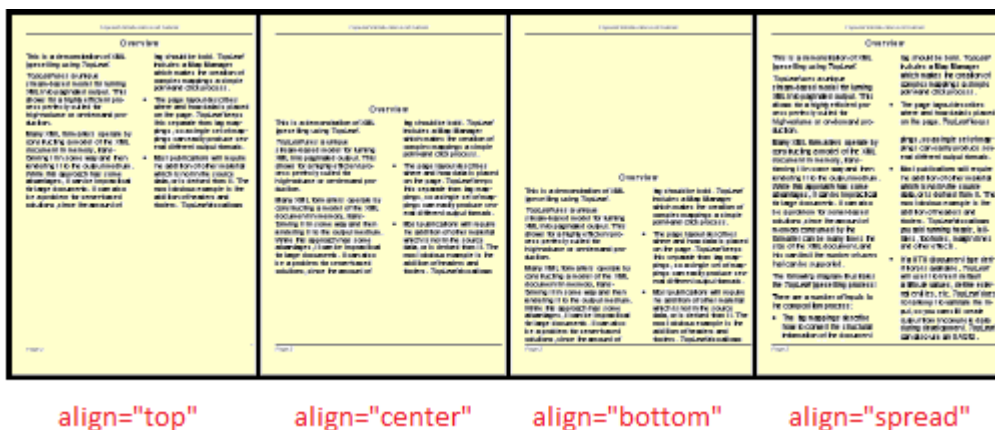
If the amount of unused space is less than the threshold measurement then column balancing does not occur. The threshold is ignored when there is no content placed in the last column.

The default column balancing mode distributes the content between all columns. You can also select the **minimal** mode to use the smallest possible number of columns. The following diagram shows the difference between the two modes.



3.3.13 Vertical alignment

When no additional content can be allocated to a page, TopLeaf will vertically align the allocated content within the page data area. Vertically aligning the page content involves redistributing the unallocated vertical space in order to position the content at the top, bottom, or middle of the page. By default, content will be aligned to the top of the page data area. Alternatively, when the amount of unallocated vertical space is less than a specified **threshold**, Topleaf can vertically spread that content by redistributing the unallocated space between page segments, paragraphs, or individual lines.



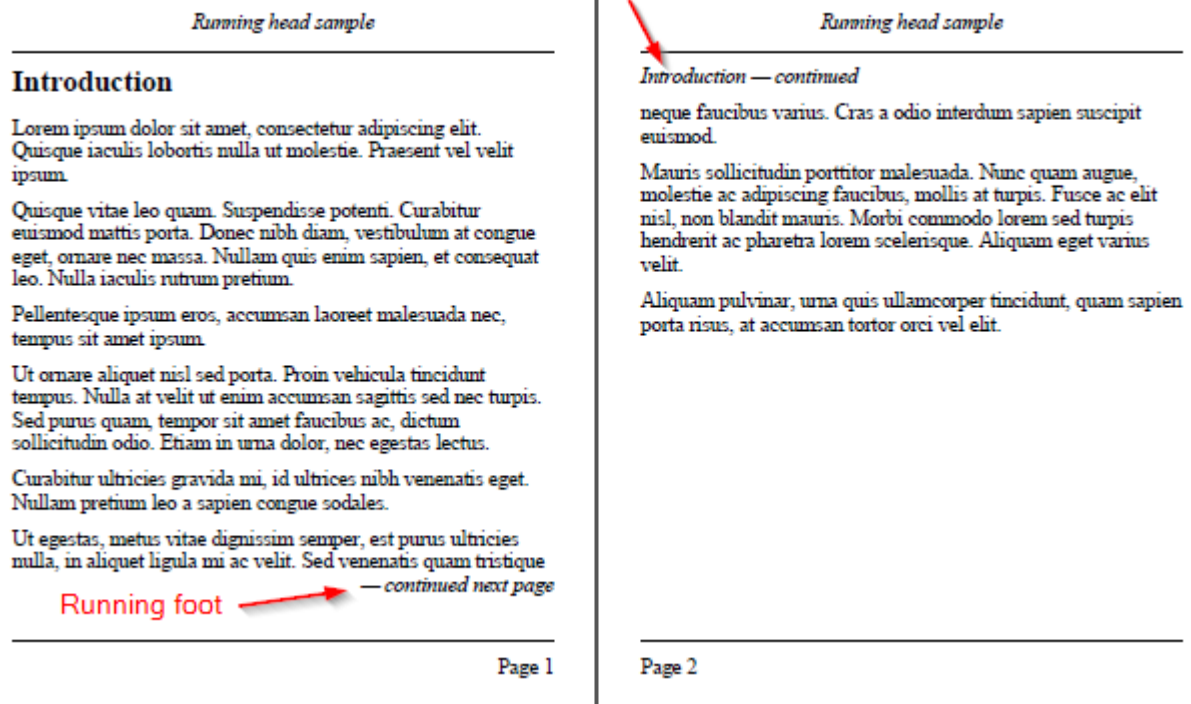
The vertical alignment mode is set from a start or end tag **mapping** that forces a page or leaf break.

3.4 Typesetting structures

The section describes various facilities for structuring and styling data on the page.

3.4.1 Running heads

A running head is used to provide context for a section of a document that extends over a number of pages. A typical usage is to repeat the title of the section and add “continued”. The following is an example of this as well as the use of a “running foot” to show that the section continues.



Running heads and feet are placed in the same area as the page content. To place a continuation heading outside of this area use a [header or footer mapping](#).

To create a running head, use the [Assign content to running head](#) property of the mapping. The running head will stay in effect until it is replaced by different content, or it is cancelled by a mapping with the [Cancel running head](#) property set.

The style and content of a running head is set by one of the [note mappings](#). A running foot is enabled whenever a running head is active.

The note mappings allow you to add content to the text that is displayed. For example, the “— continued” in the example above would be specified by the mapping post-content. The content for a running foot is entirely determined by the mapping.

The appearance of running heads and feet can be enabled and disabled by [options](#) in the layout.

There are five running head levels arranged in a hierarchy. These can be used to reflect the document structure. For example, the level 1 running head could be used for the chapter title, level 2 for the section title, level 3 for a subsection, and so on. Defining a running head has the effect of cancelling all the lower level running heads. For example, defining a level 3 running head will cancel levels 4 and 5.

Note:

The data column width determines the maximum available measure for a running head and running foot. For this reason, running heads are automatically reset at any forced [segment boundary](#) (for example, when changing from a single column to a double column layout). The inclusion of running heads is not recommended on pages assembled using more than one [page type](#).

3.4.2 Data telltales





Data telltales provide a means of defining pieces of content for a range of pages. This content can be used to display contextual information in headers or footers.

It is possible to define up to 9 different telltales by using the [Assign content to data telltale](#) mapping property. The telltales are independent, so defining one does not affect the others.

A telltale is set for the first page on which it appears and for all following pages until it is replaced or cancelled by the [Cancel data telltale](#) property.

A header or footer mapping can extract various information about the telltale values on a page, such as whether a value was defined before the page started, the last value defined on the page, and so on.

One possible use of telltales is where the content consists of alphabetically-ordered items. By setting a telltale for each item a header can show the first and last items on each page as shown in the following example.

<i>TopLeaf Glossary</i>	<i>box – column</i>	<i>TopLeaf Glossary</i>	<i>command – custom marker</i>
 box	A rectangular frame surrounding a region of text. The appearance, position and other aspects of the box can be controlled via the Map Manager dialogs.	 command	A construct, similar to an XML tag , which allows access to TopLeaf functions not available via the dialogs. For example: <code><rule width="2pc"/></code>
 CALS	C Continuous Acquisition and Lifecycle Support	 commit	The action of changing a looseleaf release from update phase to published phase . This administrative action is taken when all work on the source document is

3.4.3 Notes

It is a common requirement to place a piece of content outside the normal flow of the text, optionally with a small marker to alert the reader to its presence. This allows the reader to locate it if necessary without interrupting the flow of the main content. TopLeaf uses the term **note** to describe this type of material.

There are several types of notes, distinguished by where the content of the note is displayed:

- the content of a **column footnote** is displayed at the bottom of a text column.
- the content of a **page footnote** is displayed at the bottom of a page.
- the content of a **sidenote** appears alongside the place where it is referenced.
- the content of an **endnote** appears at the end of the document, or at the end of part of the document (for example, at the end of a chapter).

Footnotes and sidenotes are assigned by using mapping properties found on the [Content tab](#). There is no direct support for endnotes, but these can be created as described below.

Footnote types

The distinction between column and page footnotes is most apparent in a multi-column layout.

The following example shows the use of column footnotes:

Footnotes ⁽¹⁾ can be used to add additional explanation to content without interfering with how it reads. They should be used with care, however. The main text must make sense to the reader without	having to refer to the footnotes. Footnotes are often used in legal publications to add citations ⁽²⁾ or references to other material.
(1) TopLeaf provides both column and page footnotes.	(2) Such as references to legal cases or legislation.

Page 1

The following is the same content using page footnotes:

Footnotes ⁽¹⁾ can be used to add additional explanation to content without interfering with how it reads. They should be used with care, however. The main text must make sense to the reader without	having to refer to the footnotes. Footnotes are often used in legal publications to add citations ⁽²⁾ or references to other material.
(1) TopLeaf provides both column and page footnotes. (2) Such as references to legal cases or legislation.	

Page 1

It is possible to have both column and page footnotes present on the same page. When both are present, the page footnotes always appear below the column footnotes.

When using page footnotes it may be necessary to adjust the area used to display the footnote content. The `<note-properties/>` command can be used to specify the appropriate layout page type to use.

Page footnotes can be formatted into two columns by setting an **option** in the current layout.

Footnote structure

A footnote consists of:

- A reference marker in the main content.
- A label in the footnote display area that identifies the footnote.
- The body of the footnote containing its content.

In the examples above the reference marker and label are both numbers enclosed in parentheses. The style of these is controlled by **note mappings**.

In addition, there is an optional separator that appears between the first footnote and the main text. Each type of footnote has a mapping which controls the appearance of the separator. In the examples above the separator is a short horizontal rule.

By default footnotes are numbered starting from 1 and continue throughout the document. Options for controlling this, as well as using non-numeric markers are available by using the `<note-properties/>` command.

Sidenotes

The content of a sidenote appears alongside the main content in an area defined in the **layout**.

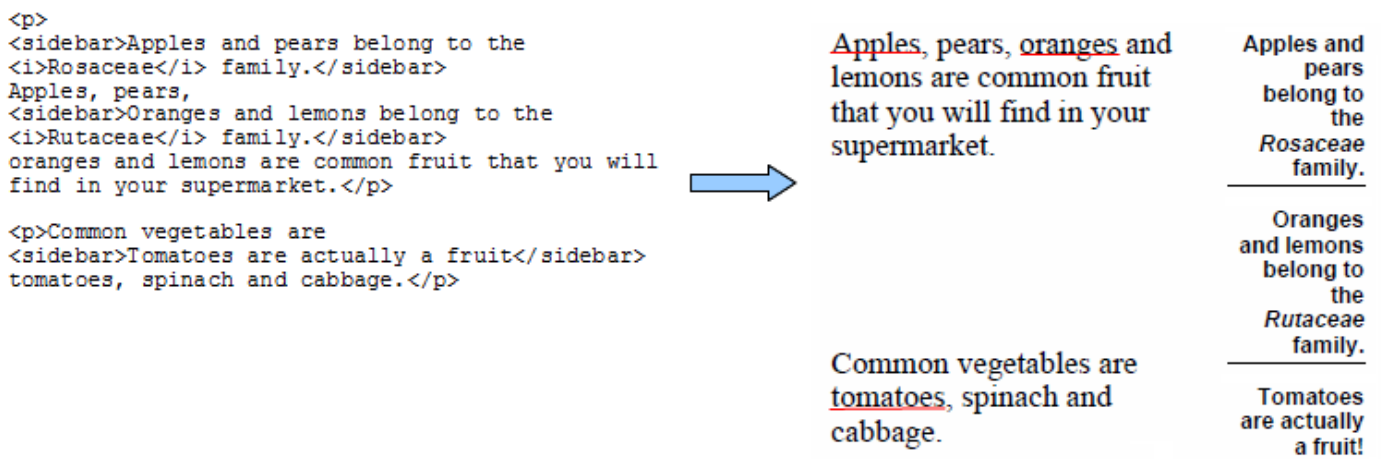
Unlike a footnote, a sidenote does not usually display a reference marker in the main text, since its vertical position associates it with the content. However, it is possible to create a marker by inserting custom content when the sidenote is defined.

The vertical position of a sidenote is determined by the position of the line of content with which it is associated. Sidenotes are arranged into the area defined by the layout in the order in which they occur. The style of the sidenote content is controlled by the `$sidenote` **note mapping**.

If there are multiple sidenotes associated with a line the first one will always be at the same vertical position as the content line. If necessary, extra vertical space will be added before the content line to allow this.

By default the baseline of the content line is aligned with the baseline of the first line of the sidenote. The `<note-properties/>` command allows the alignment method to be altered.

The following diagram illustrates sidenote alignment.



In the above the `$sidenote` mapping draws a rule below each sidenote. The red lines identify the points in the content which are associated with the sidenotes. Note that the second paragraph has been moved down so that the final sidenote can be aligned correctly.

Endnotes

There are no mapping properties specifically intended for the creation of endnotes. However, they can be created using custom content in mappings. The following is a summary of what is required. If you are not familiar with the use of custom content consult the **Mapping Guide**.

- In the `$document` mapping set a counter variable to zero, and initialize a variable to contain the notes to an empty string.

```

<set var="NoteCount" value="0"/>
<set var="Notes" string=""/>

```


- In the mapping for the note, **scan and suppress** the note content. Increment the note counter. Emit a note reference, and add the note content to the variable.

```
<set var="NoteCount" value="{NoteCount}+1"/>
<NoteRef>({NoteCount})</NoteRef>
<set var="Notes">
  {Notes}
  <Note label="{NoteCount}"><content/></Note>
</set>
```
- At the appropriate place for the notes, emit the notes variable. You will need to create a **%Note** custom marker to format each note as required.

3.4.4 Floats

A **float** is a piece of content that can be repositioned to appear at the top or bottom of a page. This is often used to make the text flow around large objects like images or tables to avoid large areas of empty space on the page and to avoid breaks in the text.

A float is created by capturing some content (typically by using the **scan and suppress** mapping properties) and using it with the **float** command.

The position in the content where the float command is issued is called the **reference point** of the float. The position of the float is subject to the following constraints:

- A float will always be positioned after its reference point.
- The width of a float is determined by the layout in effect for its reference point. If the layout page type is changed any pending floats are rendered in the current format before the new format takes effect.

The **<float-properties/>** command allows you to control aspects of float placement, such as how much space to leave between a float and the page content, and the maximum percentage of a page that can be occupied by floats.

3.4.5 Boxes

A **box** can be used to apply a border and/or a color fill to one or more contiguous paragraphs, tables, or images.

A box starts when a mapping sets the **Start box** property and ends when a (possibly different) mapping sets the **End box** property.

The appearance of the box is determined by the **box style** that is in effect when it starts.

One of the properties of the box style is whether the content within the box is “breakable”. If the **Breakable box** property is not set an **implicit bind** is applied to the box content.

TopLeaf does not support general nesting of boxes. The only nesting allowed for boxes is that a box whose style has the breakable property set can contain a box that is not breakable. See **Section 11.4.8** for more information on this and other box limitations.

3.4.6 Tables

TopLeaf supports either CALS or HTML style table markup. The type of markup used can be set in the **Format » Options...** dialog.

The table markup defines the row and column structure of the rendered table. Other aspects of the appearance, such as border color and cell padding, are controlled by the table style in effect when the table starts.

The table style can be set by the properties on the **Table tab** of the mapping, or by using the **<table-properties/>** command.

It is also possible to render content that is not marked up as a table in tabular form. Mappings can use the **custom table** commands to arrange content into rows and columns.

3.4.7 Margin rules

Margin rules, or change bars, are annotations drawn alongside content, often to indicate where material has been added or changed.

To use margin rules the **layout** must define where they will be positioned.

A margin rule is created by either:

- setting the [Start margin rule](#) and [End margin rule](#) mapping properties, or
- using the **marginrule** command.

There is a special type of marker intended to indicate that content has been deleted. This type of marker does not have a start and end because it is used to mark a single point. Deletion markers can only be created by using the **<marginrule/>** command.

The appearance of margin rules and deletion markers can be controlled by using the **<marginrule-properties/>** command.

3.4.8 Links

A **link** is an object in the output that can be activated by the user to show a different part of the document or an external resource. They are sometimes called “hyperlinks”.

A link requires:

- a piece of content that will be used to create a link in the output (for example, a phrase or image), and
- a target that is shown when the link is activated.

A link is created by assigning the value of an attribute to the [Link to Target using attribute](#) mapping property. If there is no suitable attribute in the source data, you can use the value of a **custom marker** attribute to assign the link target.

A target can be defined in two ways:

- Use the [Set Target ID from attribute](#) property to create a target that points to the element that triggered the mapping. The values in the attributes for the link and target elements must match.
- Certain values of the link attribute define an existing target. For example, a link value beginning with “http://” indicates that the target can be found by interpreting the attribute value as a Uniform Resource Identifier.

The composition engine does not attempt to check that links are valid. Links are implemented as part of the output creation. When creating a PDF you can set values in the **PDF profile** to indicate how invalid links should be processed.

Link content

In some cases all or part of the content for a link can be generated by the stylesheet. For example, you may wish to add the page number of the link target.

The Xref file described in [Section 6.3](#) can be used to generate this type of content.

3.5 Character rendering

This section describes how TopLeaf determines the appearance of characters placed on the page.

3.5.1 Definitions

The following definitions may assist in understanding this section.

A **typeface** is a design for a set of characters with shapes that will work well together. For example, Times New Roman and Arial are two typefaces.

Each typeface typically contains a number of **fonts**, each defining characters with a specific **style**. For example, Times New Roman Bold is a font in the Times New Roman typeface. (In classical typesetting terminology a font also has a specific size, as in Times New Roman Bold 9 point, but with the widespread use of scalable fonts that can define characters of any size this distinction is less often made.)

TopLeaf uses the following font styles:

- regular (sometimes called roman).
- bold.
- italic (sometimes called oblique).
- bold italic.

A **glyph** is a symbol in the font that defines the appearance of a character when it is rendered. Since there are many fonts, a single character can be represented by many different glyphs.

3.5.2 Procedure

To place a character on the page, TopLeaf locates the appropriate font by using the typeface and style selected by the mappings. These are selected on the **Font tab** or by using the **<font-properties>** command.

The available typefaces are determined by the **font configuration**.

In some cases it is not possible to define a specific typeface that will be appropriate in all circumstances, since most fonts only contain a limited number of characters. For example, it may be necessary to switch to a different typeface when rendering Japanese data. To allow for this, a **selection scheme** can be created to determine the appropriate typeface.

If the font selected does not contain the character to be rendered, a **character map** can be used to select an alternate character and/or typeface. The map can also indicate that a particular character should always be rendered with a specific typeface, regardless of the font selected by the mappings.

3.5.3 Typeface selection scheme

A typeface selection scheme defines a set of rules that the TopLeaf typesetting engine uses when rendering a character in the context of a mapping. When a mapping is processed, TopLeaf first checks if the mapping references a typeface selection scheme defined in the scheme file. If a scheme is defined, then the composition engine applies the typeface selection rules declared for that scheme. If a typeface selection scheme cannot be located, then TopLeaf assumes that the mapping is referencing a typeface installed on the current platform.

Advantages of a typeface selection scheme include:

- you can define a set of generic font families. By declaring mappings that reference selection schemes, rather than specific typefaces, you can create a set of mappings that are both publication and system independent. Migrating a set of mappings to a different publication (or platform) is simplified — you only need to declare or adjust a single publication selection schemes file.
- the typeface selected can depend on the data being rendered.

Each selection scheme consists of one or more *typeface selection rules*. TopLeaf tests each selection rule in a scheme in the order they are specified. The first one which contains a glyph for

the character being rendered is chosen. If none of the typefaces in the scheme contain a glyph for the character, TopLeaf will attempt to render the character by using the [character map](#).

Typeface selection schemes are defined in a file called **scheme.cfg**. TopLeaf locates the scheme file by first checking the publication folder, followed by its parent folder and so on, until the root of the repository is reached. The first instance found of a file with this name is used. The scheme.cfg file contains data in an XML-compatible format. The root element should be called `<schemes>` and contain one or more `<scheme>` elements. Each `<scheme>` contains one or more `<typeface>` elements specifying a typeface that may be chosen when this scheme is in effect.

A condition can be associated with each typeface selection rule, so that it is only available for selection for a certain **language**, **locale** and/or specific character codes.

The value of language and locale can be set by the `<text-properties/>` command or by the value of the `xml:lang` attribute when the `<topleaf-properties/>` command indicates that this should be processed. The language value is always lower-case, so you should only use lower-case values in selection rules. Case is ignored when selecting locale values.

To limit the selection rule to specific character codes, add a **range** attribute whose value is a comma-separated list of hexadecimal value ranges. Each range can be either a single value or a pair of values separated by "-".

When several **lang**, **locale** and/or **range** attributes are present, all conditions must be satisfied for the typeface to be included.

Warning:

Although the scheme file uses a syntax that is compatible with XML, it is not read using a full XML parser. Do not put anything other than tags and comments in this file, and only use ASCII characters.

Example

The following is an example **scheme.cfg** file:

```
<schemes>

  <scheme name="Titles">
    <typeface name="Arial"/>
    <typeface name="Arial Unicode MS"/>
  </scheme>

  <scheme name="Body">
    <typeface name="Fraktur" lang="de"/>
    <typeface name="MS Song" locale="zh-CN" />
    <typeface name="UnBatang" range="AC00-D7A3,1100-11FF"/>
    <typeface name="Times New Roman"/>
  </scheme>

  <scheme name="Arial" >
    <typeface name="Times New Roman" range="0600-06FF" />
    <typeface name="Times New Roman" range="0750-077F" />
    <typeface name="Times New Roman" range="FB50-FDFF" />
    <typeface name="Times New Roman" range="FE70-FEFE" />
    <typeface name="Arial" />
  </scheme>
</schemes>
```

This defines three schemes. The first one, called *Titles*, specifies two typefaces. When rendering a character, TopLeaf will first attempt to find a glyph in the Arial typeface. If no glyph is found, it will then look for one in the Arial Unicode MS typeface.

The second scheme specifies typefaces which are only available under certain conditions. The Fraktur typeface can only be selected when the current language is German. The MS Song typeface can only be used when the current language **locale** is simplified Chinese. The UnBatang typeface will only be used for rendering characters in the ranges U+AC00 to U+D7A3 and U+1100 to U+11FF inclusive.

The third scheme, called *Arial*, sources all Arabic characters (including all presentational forms) from the Times New Roman typeface, and all other glyphs from the Arial typeface.

Typeface selection for secondary transforms

In output created by **secondary transforms** it is generally not possible to control typeface selection for individual characters as it is in paginated output. The transform engine therefore processes typeface selection schemes in a slightly different way.

You can create a scheme file used for a specific output type by using the name “scheme-**format.cfg**”. The transform engine will use this in preference to the standard scheme file. For example, when producing RTF output the **scheme-rtf.cfg** file will be used if it is present; otherwise **scheme.cfg** will be used.

Within a specific scheme, preference will be given to **unqualified** typefaces (i.e. those without any selection attributes). The way typefaces are selected depends on the type of output format:

- For formats that require a specific typeface (e.g. RTF) the first unqualified typeface in the scheme is used, or the first typeface in the list if there are no unqualified typefaces.
- For formats that can use a list of typefaces (e.g. HTML) the unqualified typefaces are listed first, followed by the other typefaces.

In the example **above**, the *Body* scheme would select typefaces as follows:

- For RTF: Times New Roman;
- For HTML: Times New Roman, Fraktur, MS Song, UnBatang.

3.5.4 Character map

XML documents can contain any of the characters defined in the [Unicode](#) standard. A given font will probably not contain symbols for every possible character. This is particularly true for Type 1 fonts, which do not allow for more than 256 glyphs to be encoded in a single font, and which do not use a Unicode encoding.

Note:

TopLeaf currently only supports characters in the Basic Multilingual Plane.

Declaring a character map file

TopLeaf uses a *character map* to specify the action taken when a character is not present in the currently selected font. It also allows you to force certain characters to use a particular font, overriding the font specified by the mappings.

The default character map is found in the file **charmap** in the **data\sgml** subfolder of the TopLeaf installation folder.

Do not make changes to this file, since it will be replaced each time you update TopLeaf. Instead, copy it into your TopLeaf repository as file **charmap.loc**.

If this file is present TopLeaf will use it instead of the default charmap file. For example, if your TopLeaf repository is located at **C:\TopLeaf**, then you could create a local character map file at

C:\TopLeaf\charmap.loc. A file in this location will apply to the whole repository. You can also place it in other locations as described in [Section 4.6](#).

If a definition for the character cannot be found after applying the rules in the character map, an error is generated and a default character is drawn. The default character depends on the currently selected font.

Character map file structure

A character map contains **<range>** and **<replace>** elements. Use a **range** element to map characters to a specific font. Use a **replace** element to specify an alternate character in the same font.

The information in the **range** elements is applied first. If this does not result in a match the **replace** elements are examined.

Warning:

Although the charmap file uses a syntax that is compatible with XML, it is not read using a full XML parser. Do not put anything other than tags and comments in this file, and only use ASCII characters.

The <range> element

A **range** element maps a contiguous sequence of Unicode characters to a contiguous sequence of data points in a font. The Unicode range is specified by the **ustart** and **uend** attributes. The target data points are specified by the **data** attribute (only the start of the sequence is required, because it is always the same length as the Unicode sequence). All of these attributes are interpreted as hexadecimal values if they start with “x”, or as decimal values if not.

Note:

If the replacement characters do not form a contiguous sequence in the same order as the original characters, then you must use multiple **<range>** elements to specify the map.

The **typeface** attribute determines the target font. The font used is the regular style font for the nominated typeface (normal weight and not italic).

For example:

```
<range ustart="x39A" uend="x39D" data="x4B" typeface="Symbol"/>
```

defines the action for the Unicode characters with hexadecimal codes 39A, 39B, 39C and 39D. When one of these characters is encountered and it is not present in the current font, TopLeaf switches to the **Symbol** font and draws the character at data point 4B, 4C, 4D or 4E, respectively.

Note:

The typeface must appear in the [font configuration](#).

If the **uend** value is not present the action applies to the single character given by **ustart**. If the **data** attribute is not present it defaults to the value of **ustart**. The **ustart** attribute must be present.

Note:

Characters in the range U+0020 to U+007F (i.e. ASCII) cannot be mapped. If these code points are used an error will be generated.

When the target font uses the Unicode character set the **data** attribute can be omitted to indicate that the code point is not changed. However, it can still be used to map to a different code point if required.

You may also specify that the substitution will always happen by including the **select** attribute with value **always**, for example:

```
<range ustart="9986" data="x22" typeface="Wingdings"
select="always"/>
```

which causes the character with decimal code 9986 (U+2702) to always produce the “scissors” character from the Wingdings font, regardless of whether the current font contains this character.

If the sequences specified by the **<range>** elements overlap, the ones later in the document take precedence over the earlier ones. In other words, define the most general rules first, and more specific rules last.

For example:

```
<range ustart="x4E00" uend="x9FBF"
typeface="CJKStandard" select="always"/>
<range ustart="x4EAC"
typeface="CJKSpecial" select="always"/>
```

maps all of the characters in the range U+4E00 to U+9FBF (the CJK Unified Ideographs) to a standard typeface, but maps a specific character in this range to a different typeface.

The <replace> element

The **replace** element must contain two attributes. The **char** attribute defines a character code point. The **alt** attribute defines an alternate code point that is used if the font does not contain the character. Both attributes are interpreted as hexadecimal values if they start with “x”, or as decimal values if not.

This is intended to be used to identify characters with identical appearance that can be substituted without changing the meaning of the output. For example:

```
<replace char="x2011" alt="x002D"/>
```

This indicates that if the font does not contain the non-breaking hyphen (U+2011) a hyphen-minus (U+002D) can be used instead. Note that this only changes the appearance of the character, not its meaning. The composition engine will still treat it as a non-breaking character.

3.6 Hyphenation

3.6.1 What is hyphenation?

Hyphenation occurs when the composition engine must split a word that would otherwise extend beyond the right margin of the text column.

When a word needs to be hyphenated, TopLeaf can determine the permitted hyphenation points using one or more of the following methods:

- *soft* — split a word if a soft hyphen (Unicode code point **U+00AD**) appears within that word;
- *dictionary* — search a language specific hyphenation exception list or dictionary;
- *rule-based* — apply a set of language specific hyphenation rules.

You can use the **<hyphenation/>** command to set the length of the smallest word that will be considered for hyphenation.

3.6.2 Language specific hyphenation

The **xml:lang** attribute specifies the language for a given context. If an element is declared with an **xml:lang=ID** attribute, then the value of **ID** may influence the hyphenation method used by TopLeaf to process content within that element. The value of **xml:lang** can be defined as an [ISO 639](#) language code (usually a two or three character code), followed by an optional ISO country code. Note that in most cases, the country code will be the main factor that determines the

hyphenation language rules. You can control how TopLeaf interprets the value of `xml:lang` by including a `<toleaf-properties/>` directive in the **custom content** for a tag mapping.

You can use the `<text-properties/>` directive to assign an [ISO 639](#) language code if your XML markup uses a different attribute to declare the current language.

TopLeaf includes an embedded Dashes™ hyphenation module (developed by Circle Noetics Services Inc). Language specific hyphenation is supported for the following languages:

xml:lang	Language	xml:lang	Language
alb, sqi	Albanian	it, ita	Italian
be, bel	Belorussian	lv, lav	Latvian
bg, bul	Bulgarian	lt, lit	Lithuanian
ca, cat	Catalan	nob, nb, no, nno, nor	Norwegian
hr	Croatian	pl, pol	Polish
cs, cse, cze	Czech	pt, por	Portuguese
da, dan	Danish	ro, ron, rum	Romanian
nl, nla, dut	Dutch	ru, rus	Russian
en, en-US, eng	English (US)	sk, slo, slk	Slovak
fi, fin	Finnish	sl, slv	Slovenian
fr, fra, fre	French	es, esl, esa	Spanish
de, deu, ger	German	sw, swa	Swahili
de-1901	German (1901)	sv, sve, swe	Swedish
el, ell, gre	Greek	de-CH, ger-ch	Swiss-German
hu, hun	Hungarian	tr, tur	Turkish
is, isl, ice	Icelandic	uk, ukr	Ukrainian

3.6.3 Controlling hyphenation

In order to control how TopLeaf determines a set of permitted hyphenation word breaks, you must:

1. Enable one or more **hyphenation methods**. For example, to enable exception list and rule based hyphenation, set Use Hyphenation Dictionary and Use Language hyphenation rules from the [Format » Options](#) dialog.
2. Select the **hyphenation mode** permitted within the context of a mapping. For example, when a mapping requests **Full** hyphenation, TopLeaf will apply a series of hyphenation **precedence rules** to determine the hyphenation break points.

3.6.4 Hyphenation exception dictionaries

Hyphenation exception dictionaries allow you to declare your own hyphenation break points or stop TopLeaf from hyphenating a word altogether. Each dictionary file declares a list of exception words for a specific language. When processing multi-lingual content, you can define and load multiple exception lists.

Using a hyphenation exception dictionary

To use a hyphenation exception dictionary you must:

1. Create an exceptions dictionary file;
2. Enable [Use Hyphenation Dictionary](#) from the [Format » Options](#) dialog;
3. Load the exceptions list using the `<dictionary/>` directive.

Exception dictionary file format

An exception dictionary file is a text file created using either UTF-8 or UTF-16 character encoding. The first two or three characters are examined to see if a *byte order mark* character (U+FEFF) is present. If so, this is used to determine the encoding. The byte order mark is not treated as part of the data. If no byte order mark is found UTF-8 is assumed.

The dictionary file declares one or more hyphenation word definitions, entered on separate lines terminated by a recognized [line break](#). A hyphenation word definition specifies the permitted hyphenation points for a single word. Hyphenation points are identified using either a hard hyphen (Unicode code point **U+002D**) or a soft hyphen (Unicode code point **U+00AD**), as shown in the following examples:

```
pre-car-iously  
pol-y-mor-phic  
mis-place  
mis-placed  
pre&#x002D;ce&#x002D;dent
```

Restrictions

Entries within an exception dictionary:

- have a maximum length of 255 characters;
- are case insensitive;
- can be entered in any order;
- can include [XML character references](#) to refer to specific Unicode code point values;
- cannot include white space characters.

Word definitions should not include any punctuation characters (other than hyphens).

3.7 Bidirectional processing

TopLeaf supports **top-to-bottom** bidirectional typesetting, allowing the mixture of **LTR** (left-to-right) and **RTL** (right-to-left) content without disrupting line breaks or causing punctuation problems. For example, European languages are normally rendered left-to-right, whereas Arabic and Hebrew content is rendered from right-to-left. Bidirectional processing occurs within distinct **presentational layers** at the document, block, paragraph, contextual, and character level.

3.7.1 Document directionality

In TopLeaf the whole document has a directionality that controls the placement of fixed blocks and the way the book is bound. The document directionality is responsible for the selection of left and right page layouts, and in a multi-column page layout the order in which the data block columns are filled.

The document directionality is determined from the [language](#) associated with the document root element. The default document language is declared as a publication formatting [option](#). This can be overridden by the language set by the `xml:lang` attribute or through the `<text-properties lang="LA" />` directive.

You can use the same stylesheet for RTL and LTR documents. Rather than swap the terms *left* and *right* when the document direction is RTL, the TopLeaf convention is that all right and left terms switch direction when RTL mode is in force. For example, if the document directionality is RTL, and the current page type declares separate **left and right page** layouts, TopLeaf selects the left page layout when processing a recto page, and the right page layout when processing a verso page. The terms **Inside** and **Outside** are not affected by the page directionality, with **Inside** always adjacent to the binding.

3.7.2 Block directionality

The document directionality determines the default directionality for the content of the following page regions:

- Data blocks
- Header and Footer fixed blocks
- Footnotes, sidenotes, and running heads
- Floats objects

3.7.3 Paragraph directionality

Paragraph directionality controls the interpretation of line breaking, alignment, margins, indents, and list item labels declared by the current **paragraph style**. The paragraph directionality determines the base direction — left-to-right or right-to-left — assigned to neutral text surrounded by text of differing directions in the content of the paragraph. The paragraph directionality is assigned at the point at which content is first added to a paragraph and remains in force until the paragraph ends.

Where a paragraph is assembled by **merging** the content of one or more elements, the paragraph directionality is assigned at the *beginning* of the merged content. For example, the paragraph directionality for a **list-item or labeled** paragraph is determined by the directionality in force at the start of the label. In the case of a page or column footnote, the directionality for the footnote body is determined by the directionality in force at the start of the footnote **label**.

Paragraph directionality is determined by:

1. a block mapping's **paragraph style** where this explicitly declares the direction as LTR or RTL.
2. the directionality of the parent block mapping from within which the paragraph is rendered. The parent mapping either sets or inherits an explicitly declared paragraph direction.
3. The directionality of the language specified by the **{language}** system variable.

Rather than swap the terms *left* and *right* when the paragraph direction is RTL, the TopLeaf convention is that all right and left terms switch direction when RTL mode is in force. For example, the First left indent in a paragraph with RTL directionality performs exactly the same function as its LTR equivalent, except that the indent is on the right side of the block.

3.7.4 Contextual directionality

Most paragraphs define a single contextual region whose directionality matches that inherited from the paragraph. It is possible to define additional LTR and RTL contextual regions within a paragraph using one of the following three markers:

- **LRE** (Unicode code point **U+202A**) introduces an LTR context;
- **RLE** (Unicode code point **U+202B**) introduces an RTL context;
- **PDF** (Unicode code point **U+202C**) reverses the current context.

3.7.5 Character directionality

Every character has an associated inherent directionality, which in broad terms, is one of:

- LTR (for example, Roman/Cyrillic characters, and CJK characters);
- RTL (for example, Arabic and Hebrew characters);
- Weak (for example, number characters);
- Neutral (for example, punctuation and whitespace).

At the character level, the composition engine is responsible for the directional rendering of runs of LTR and RTL sequences, character mirroring, and the selection of RTL ligatures and presentational forms.

3.7.6 Data block allocation order

In a document processed with LTR directionality, data in a multi-column page layout is allocated to data blocks from left to right. In a document processed with an RTL directionality, the order in which the data block columns are filled is reversed — text begins at the top of the right hand column and ends at the bottom left.

3.7.7 Tables

The directionality of a table is the **paragraph directionality** inherited from the parent block mapping. You can use the `<table-properties/>` directive to explicitly declare the preferred table directionality. For HTML tables, the directionality can be specified by the `table` element `dir` attribute.

For a left-to-right table, column zero is on the left side and row zero is at the top. For a right-to-left table, column zero is on the right side and row zero is at the top.

3.7.8 Image and rules

TopLeaf assumes that the inherent directionality of images and rules is neutral. For all practical purposes, they can be assumed to be processed in the same way as neutral characters.

4. The repository

TopLeaf uses a **repository** to store stylesheets and content, as well as configuration information and temporary working areas.

A repository uses a folder in the local file system. The contents of a repository are ordinary files and folders, so they can be manipulated using the operating system tools. You use the TopLeaf workstation to create and modify components of the repository structure.

To create a new repository, make an empty folder in the appropriate place and use the **Preferences Dialog** to set the repository location. Use the **Open Dialog** to create objects in the repository.

TopLeaf always deals with a single repository at a time. If you have multiple repositories you can select the current repository in the **Preferences Dialog**.

Warning:

Some of the repository components may contain information specific to the machine on which they were created. This means that care must be taken when copying a repository to a different machine.

In particular, see the comments regarding the font configuration.

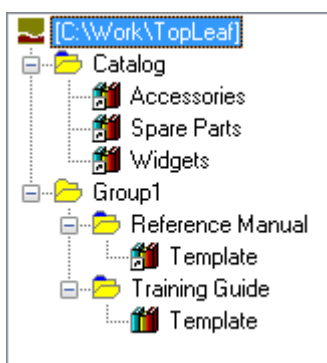
4.1 Repository components

A repository contains one or more **publications**. A publication can be used to create a number of documents, each using the same style. The document style for a publication is defined by its stylesheet.

Within a publication are one or more **partitions**. A partition is a work area for creating and rendering a document. Each partition defines the content that is rendered to produce the output.

A repository can also contain folders used to group publications together.

The following shows an example repository as it would appear in the **Open Dialog**:



In this example the **Catalog** publication has three partitions. Each partition defines a different set of content, but all of them will produce output using the publication style.

The **Group1** folder is used to contain the **Reference Manual** and **Training Guide** publications.

4.2 Releases

You can manage the life cycle of a partition by creating a **release** each time you need to distribute a new version of the rendered partition content.

A partition release is a document **snapshot** defined when a partition is first created and then each time you create a new **update**. A **looseleaf** partition will include at least two releases — an update

phase and a published phase. The **update phase** contains material being prepared for the next release. The **published phase** contains the material most recently published.

When you compose a partition, TopLeaf creates one or more output pages using the content referenced from the partition update phase. In a typical update cycle, both the input content and the stylesheets used to produce the rendered output may be adjusted until an approved set of output pages is produced.

TopLeaf assumes that the page output is not acceptable unless the input content is rendered without composition errors or warnings. To enforce this rule, all publishing controls are disabled until a partition is typeset without error. The **partition properties** include an option to allow publishing a **change pages** release if there are warnings but not errors.

When all changes to the partition content are complete, and the rendered output is correct, the partition update is ready to be published. TopLeaf creates a new document baseline using the current update phase, and this becomes the new published phase of the partition. If you have decided to track changes between releases, TopLeaf uses the published release as a baseline to detect changes made during the next update cycle.

The ability to manage releases is an important part of **looseleaf publishing**.

4.2.1 The release label

Each release can have a **release label**. This might be a number (e.g. 15), a date (e.g. June 2014) or any other identifying string (e.g. Act 07/37 amendments). Each page of the document can then be associated with the release when it was last changed.

Release information can be useful in electronic documents, as it provides an indication of the currency of pages as the document is changed over time. However, the main role of release management is in the distribution and maintenance of *paper* documents. In order to minimize printing and distribution costs, it is common practice to publish only those pages which have been changed since the last release. These are then issued to the end users, along with a set of **filing instructions** (e.g. *Remove pages 25 to 28, replace with new pages 25 to 28/2*) which tell the user how to update their document. Since this usually involves replacing pages or groups of pages in a ring binder, it is commonly referred to as *looseleaf publishing*.

4.2.2 Publishing a release

For more information about release management, see the **Publish** and **Next Update** commands.

4.3 Repository path names

The names of repository levels (folders, publications and partitions) are subject to the following restrictions.

A level name may not begin with a '.' (U+002E).

The following characters may not be used in a level name:

- \ (U+005C)
- / (U+002F)
- : (U+003A)
- , (U+002C)
- * (U+002A)
- ? (U+003F)
- " (U+0022)
- ' (U+0027)
- < (U+003C)

- > (U+003E)
- | (U+007C)
- _ (U+005F)
- - (U+002D)
- \$ (U+0024)
- % (U+0025)

The level names **graphics** and **notesdef** are reserved for use by TopLeaf.

TopLeaf uses the underscore character (U+005F) to represent space characters in repository level names. If you use the TopLeaf API to create a partition or repository level, and that level or partition name contains underscore characters, then the underscore characters will be displayed as spaces when viewed from the TopLeaf GUI.



4.4 Working with partitions

You can use the TopLeaf workstation to access one or more partitions in the repository. To open the partition you wish to work with, use the **Open Dialog**.



The most common sequence of steps when using a partition is:

1. Define the **content** used by the partition;
2. Compose the content using a TopLeaf stylesheet;
3. Rendering the output to PDF or one of the alternate formats.

The following are some common operations performed on an open partition:

- Commands » Replace Partition Document... to define the **content** of the partition.
- Commands » Compose or  to compose the partition content.
- File » Create PDF... or  to create a PDF rendition of the composed content.

When a partition is open you can edit the stylesheet stored in the publication. Note that editing a stylesheet will affect the output of all of the partitions in the same publication. The different parts of the stylesheet can be edited using the following:

- Format » Page Layout... or  opens the **layout editor**.
- Format » Mappings... or  opens the **map editor** to edit tag and custom mappings.


4.5 Partition content

A partition can define its content in one of two ways:

- A copy of the document content can be stored in the partition update as a part of the repository. This type of partition is called a **copy** partition.
- The document content can be held outside of the repository and referred to by its full file path name. This type of partition is called a **linked** partition.

Note that the above does not apply to **full looseleaf** partitions after the **mainwork** (initial release). These partitions always store a copy of the document content.

There are two ways to modify the content of a partition:

- Use Commands » Edit or press  to edit the content using the editor application of your choice. You can set the preferred content editor from the **Preferences Dialog**.

- Use [Commands » Replace Partition Document...](#) to update from or link the partition to an external file.

The way that a partition refers to its content is determined when the partition is **created**. Unless the partition contains the content of a **full looseleaf** update, you can change an existing partition from a linked partition to a copy partition, or from a copy partition to a linked partition by **replacing** the partition document content.

In general, it is preferable to use a linked partition to ensure that any resources referred to using relative paths are resolved. Content stored in the partition as part of the repository must be self-contained.

Note:

When the partition document content is being updated an **edit lock** is placed on the partition. This prevents anyone else from attempting to edit the content at the same time. An edit lock can be removed by using [Commands » Unlock](#).

4.5.1 Book lists

If you are using a **change pages** page management model or the partition **page management** model is not specified, then your partition can use a **book list** to reference content sourced from multiple document files. A book list is a text file where each line contains the path to a file containing content. When the partition is composed each file is read in the order it occurs in the book list.

To create a book list use [Commands » Add Files to Partition...](#)

The book list can be edited by using [Commands » Edit Partition Document List...](#)

If a book list name entry declares a simple filename (i.e. the entry does not specify an absolute file path) then the entry identifies a document held within the partition source document folder.

If a book list name entry declares an absolute file path then the entry identifies a document held externally to the partition source document folder.

Note:

When working with XML content, it may be preferable to use file entities to reference multiple source documents from a single top level document. If you are working with DITA content, then you can use a bookmap to organise content referenced from multiple source documents.

4.6 Configuration files

In addition to stylesheets, the repository contains a number of files containing information used during composition and output generation. The section contains information about these configuration files.

The position of a configuration file in the repository is significant. In general, a configuration file applies to the level containing it, and all levels below it. This means that a configuration file:

- in a partition folder affects only that partition;
- in a publication folder affects all of the partitions in that publication;
- in the root folder of the repository affects all publications.

4.6.1 PDF profiles

When creating a PDF from composed data you can specify a profile that determines the type of PDF created. See [Chapter 5](#) for information about PDF creation, and [Section 10.5.10](#) for a description of the profile editor.

PDF profiles are stored in the **profiles.cfg** configuration file.

TopLeaf contains a default PDF profile that is used if no configuration file exists. When the profile editor is used for the first time a **profiles.cfg** file is created in the root folder of the repository. This file can be copied to other folders if you wish to create profiles that only apply to part of the repository.

4.6.2 Font configuration

TopLeaf uses a cross-platform system for accessing and using fonts. This means that if you install a standard font (either TrueType or OpenType) it will normally be immediately available for use (but see *Warnings* below). However, it is sometimes necessary to exercise finer control over fonts. This is particularly true when creating **PDF output**, since selection of the correct font can be crucial to whether the PDF produces the desired result.

Topleaf manages fonts using the **font.cfg** configuration file. The list of typefaces displayed in the mapping **Font tab** is determined by the font configuration file.

If no font configuration file exists for a repository, one is constructed by enumerating all of the installed typefaces. This means that you don't need to do anything unless the constructed font configuration file doesn't meet your needs.

If a repository is copied to a machine with different fonts, or with fonts stored in a different location, it is recommended that you remove the **font.cfg** files in the new repository so they can be recreated for the new environment.

The **Font Configuration dialog** can be used to edit the configuration file.

Warning:

In work groups involving multiple document users connecting to the same network repository, each machine running TopLeaf must have all fonts referenced in the font configuration. Furthermore, these fonts must be installed in the same location on all machines.

Alternatively, if your repository is on a server and is accessed by several PCs, consider changing its font configuration so that new typefaces are not automatically updated. This will help prevent unwanted typefaces from being included in the TopLeaf font list.

OpenType fonts are only partially supported. If you choose to use these fonts you must test that they work correctly. Turn-Key Systems accepts no responsibility for problems caused by the use of OpenType fonts.

Note:

TopLeaf can also use PostScript Type 1 fonts with some restrictions. This is a legacy format that is not compatible with Unicode and other modern standards. If you are using this format you should consider migrating to TrueType fonts.

Windows versions from Vista onwards have diminished Type 1 support. This can give rise to fonts simply not appearing in the font configuration. If this happens, the only solution may be to obtain a newer version of the font. This issue can also arise when upgrading a desktop or server to a new version of Windows.

4.6.3 Typeface selection

The **scheme.cfg** configuration file is used to define **typeface selection schemes**.

4.6.4 Character mapping

The **charmap.loc** configuration file is used to define a **character map**.

4.6.5 Color palette

The **palette.cfg** configuration file stores information about colors used in the stylesheet.

Since this file relates to a particular stylesheet it should always be placed in the publication folder. Use the **color palette dialog** to create and modify this file.

4.7 Stylesheets

A stylesheet defines the appearance of rendered output. Each publication in the repository contains a stylesheet. This section discusses the management of stylesheets in the repository. See **Chapter 3** for information about creating and using stylesheets.

4.7.1 Stylesheet files

A stylesheet is defined by two XML files:

- **mappings.tlx** contains the mappings
- **layout.xml** contains the page layout information

Note:

If your publication folder does not contain a **mappings.tlx** file, use the [Commands » Stylesheet Upgrade](#) menu item to upgrade to the new format.

The **layout.xml** file is edited using the **layout editor**. Changing this file manually is not recommended, since it contains measurements which must all be consistent to ensure correct results.

The **mappings.tlx** file is normally edited using the **map editor**. The next section contains information about this file to assist you if you want to change it manually.

A schema for mappings is installed in the **sys\lib\mappings** folder. This is provided as a convenience only. It is not used by TopLeaf to validate the mappings, so it should not be regarded as definitive.

Mappings Source Format

The **mappings.tlx** file contains an XML document with the following characteristics:

- The root element is called **mappings**. It must contain a **version** attribute. The version value to use with the format described below is “1.1”. The other attributes are used internally by TopLeaf. You should not change any of these.
- The first child element is called **options** and contains information about how the stylesheet will operate.
- The remaining child elements are called **mapping** and each one describes a separate tag, custom marker, header, footer or note mapping.

The order of **mapping** elements is not important, except that if there are duplicate mappings TopLeaf will use the last one encountered. Mappings are treated as duplicates if they have the same values for the **path**, **type**, **predicate** and **occurs** attributes.

The following sections describe the attributes that may be present on the **mapping** element and its children. The following attribute types may be used:

- **measure** is a numeric value followed by a two-character unit specifier. The possible units are **pt** (points), **cm** (centimeters), **mm** (millimeters), **in** (inches), **pc** (picas) or **dp** (decipoints).
- **boolean** may have the value **yes** or **no**. The values **1** and **0** may also be used.
- **color** is an RGB color specification. This can be one of the 16 color names described [here](#)

or a string of the form “#RRGGBB” where each color component is a 2-digit hexadecimal number. If a **color palette** is defined for the stylesheet, one of the defined color names should be used.

Where the map editor allows a variable to be used to specify a value, the corresponding attribute may contain a variable name enclosed in {...}.

Note:

TopLeaf does not validate the **mappings.tlx** file, so any attributes or elements with incorrect names will be ignored.

options element

Only one **options** element is allowed in the document. It must precede all of the **mapping** elements. The information in this element can be edited with the [Format » Options](#) dialog. Consult the documentation for this dialog for information on the attribute values.

Attribute	Meaning
table-model	One of CALS or HTML . If not present no table model is defined.
rule-width	A measure defining the default width of rules.
hyphen-dict	A boolean determining whether dictionary-based hyphenation is used.
hyphen-rules	A boolean determining whether rule-based hyphenation is used.
language	This is the numeric code of the default language. The value zero indicates English. Contact Turn-Key support for a list of language codes.
balance-cols	A boolean determining whether column heights are equalized at a segment boundary.
run-build	This optional element controls typesetting behavior for stylesheets created with older versions of TopLeaf. Consult Turn-Key support before making any changes to this attribute.

mapping element

Attribute	Meaning
path	This is the only mandatory attribute. It contains the tag-in-context value (including the page context) for tag and custom marker mappings, and the name for head/footer and note mappings.
type	This identifies the type of mapping, and may be tag , custom , headfoot or note . The default value is tag .
predicate	For tag or custom mappings, this contains the attribute selector expression.
occurs	For tag or custom mappings, this contains the occurrence selector .
priority	This is an integer between 1 and 5. The default value is 3. Mappings with priority 1 are tested first, followed by 2 and so on; the first matching mapping found will be used. For mappings with the same priority value the normal precedence rules apply.

The values of the **path**, **type**, **predicate** and **occurs** attributes together uniquely identify a mapping.

start element

The **start** child element contains values from the **Start Tag tab** of the map editor. It is only used for tag and custom mappings.

Attribute	Meaning
class	The mapping classification. One of block , inline , listitem or label . This attribute is mandatory for tag and custom mappings.
listtype	Only used for list items. One of bullet , circle , square , shadowbox , diamond , decimal , lalpha , ualpha , lroman , uroman , emdash or endash .
bind-prev	A boolean for bind to previous paragraph.
conspace-above	A boolean for consolidate space above.
cancel-merge	A boolean for disable merge with previous.
bind	A boolean for bind element content.
start-box	A boolean for start box.
start-mrule	A boolean for start margin rule.
new-page	A boolean for a page break that starts a new page. This is deprecated; use page-break instead.
new-group	A boolean for a new leaf group or leaf section (ignored if not full looseleaf). This is deprecated; use page-break instead.
page-type	The name of the page type to select.
page-break	One of next , odd , column or group corresponding to the map editor options Page , Leaf , Column and Group , respectively.
headers	Determine if headers are displayed. Ignored unless the mapping forces a page break or page type change. One of honor , show , hideall or hideone .
footers	Determine if footers are displayed. As for headers .
valign	Control vertical justification of the page. Ignored unless the mapping forces a page break or page type change. One of top , bottom , center or spread .

The **start** element may contain a child element called **rule-above** if the mapping generates a horizontal line above. This can have the following attributes.

Attribute	Meaning
width	A measure determining the rule weight.
space	A measure determining the space between the rule and the mapping content.
color	The rule color.

end element

The **end** child element contains values from the **End Tag tab** of the map editor. It is only used for tag and custom mappings.

Attribute	Meaning
bind-next	A boolean for bind to following paragraph.
merge-next	A boolean for merge with following paragraph.
conspace-below	A boolean for consolidate space below.
end-box	A boolean for end box.
end-mrule	A boolean for end margin rule.
end-page	A boolean for end page. This is deprecated; use page-break instead.
end-group	A boolean for an end leaf group or leaf section (ignored if not full looseleaf . This is deprecated; use page-break instead.
end-part	A boolean for end partition (ignored if not full looseleaf).
page-type	The name of the page type to select.
page-break	One of next , odd , column or group corresponding to the map editor options Page , Leaf , Column and Group , respectively.
cancel-tt	The number of the data telltale to cancel (1–9), or all .
cancel-rh	The number of the running head to cancel (1–5).
headers	Determine if headers are displayed. Ignored unless the mapping forces a page break or page type change. One of honor , show , hideall or hideone .
footers	Determine if footers are displayed. As for headers .
valign	Control vertical justification of the page. Ignored unless the mapping forces a page break or page type change. One of top , bottom , center or spread .

The **end** element may contain a child element called **rule-below** if the mapping generates a horizontal line below. This can have the following attributes.

Attribute	Meaning
width	A measure determining the rule weight.
space	A measure determining the space between the rule and the mapping content.
color	The rule color.

content element

The **content** child element contains values from the **Content tab** of the map editor.

Most of the attributes are ignored if **scan** is not **yes**.

Attribute	Meaning
scan	A boolean determining whether the element content is stored.
suppress	A boolean determining whether the content is not rendered.
runhead	The number of the running head (1–5) to which the content is assigned.
telltale	The number of the data telltale (1–9) to which the content is assigned.

Attribute	Meaning
toc	The number of the table of contents level (1–9) to which the content is assigned.
toc-suppress	A comma-separated list of element names to be removed from the toc content. Currently used only by secondary transforms.
index	The number of the index level (1–9) to which the content is assigned, or xref to assign it to XREF.
col-footnote	A boolean for assigning the content to a column footnote.
page-footnote	A boolean for assigning the content to a page footnote.
sidenote	A boolean for assigning the content to a side note.
link-attr	The name of the attribute used to create a link from the content.
target-attr	The name of the attribute whose value is used to create a link target.
content	The content model to use for reading the element content. One of default , element , mixed or preserve-space .

para element

The **para** child element contains values from the **Paragraph tab** of the map editor.

These are ignored for inline mappings.

Attribute	Meaning
align	The paragraph alignment. One of left , right , center or justify . For head/foot mappings may also be inside or outside .
before-space	A measurement for the space before (above) the paragraph.
after-space	A measurement for the space after (below) the paragraph.
left-margin	A measurement for the left margin.
right-margin	A measurement for the right margin.
first-indent	A measurement for the first/left indent.
last-indent	A measurement for the last/right indent.
label-offset	A measurement for the label offset. Ignored unless the classification is listitem or label , or this is a footnote body mapping..
label-type	The type of label. One of normal or dropped . Ignored unless the classification is label .
label-mingap	A measurement for the minimum gap after a dropped label.
label-mindepth	A measurement for the minimum depth of a dropped label.
reset-margins	A boolean for ignoring the current left and right margins.
last-align	The alignment of the last line in a paragraph. The values are as for align .

Attribute	Meaning
iws	The inter-word space when defined by a variable. See note below.
miniws	A number giving the minimum inter-word space as a percentage of the font size. See note below.
maxiws	A number giving the maximum inter-word space as a percentage of the font size. See note below.
widow-orphan	A number, or two numbers separated by / specifying the minimum number of lines allowed at the bottom and top of a page, respectively. May also be the string any or none .
before-space-boundary	The retention rule for before space. One of discard , intbound or retain .
after-space-boundary	The retention rule for after space. One of discard , intbound or retain .
direction	The paragraph reading direction. One of ltr or rtl .

Note:

When the inter-word space is defined both the **miniws** and **maxiws** attributes must be present.

If the inter-word space is defined by a variable, use the **iws** attribute and omit the **miniws** and **maxiws** attributes.

font element

The **font** child element contains values from the **Font tab** of the map editor.

Font attributes identified as tri-state have three possible values: **on**, **off** or **inherit** (the default). For these attributes, **yes** and **no** have the same meaning as **on** and **off**, respectively.

Attribute	Meaning
typeface	The name of the typeface or typeface selection scheme .
size	A measurement for the font size.
leading	A measurement for the font leading.
baseline	A number giving the baseline shift as a percentage.
char-space	A number giving the character spacing. This is a positive or negative integer expressed in thousandths of the current font size.
letter-space	A number giving letter spacing as a percentage. This is deprecated; use char-space instead.
scale	A number giving the horizontal scaling value as a percentage, where 100 is normal scaling.
italic	A tri-state value for italic style.
bold	A tri-state value for bold weight.
small	A tri-state value for small size.

Attribute	Meaning
super	A tri-state value for superscript.
sub	A tri-state value for subscript.
lowercase	A tri-state value for transform to lower case.
uppercase	A tri-state value for transform to upper case.
underline	A tri-state value for underlined.
reverse	A tri-state for reversed foreground and background colors.
frame	A tri-state for boxed text.
strikeout	A tri-state for strike through.
overbar	A tri-state for line drawn over the text.
kern-pairs	A tri-state which determines whether kerning pair information in the font is used to adjust the space between characters.
color	The text color.
hyphen-mode	The hyphenation mode. One of off , emergency or normal .
hyphen-type	The type of hyphenation split points used. One of explicit , good or poor .

Note:

The hyphenation mode was formerly controlled by a single attribute called **hyphenation**. The corresponding new attribute values are:

- For **hyphenation="full"** use **hyphen-mode="normal"** and **hyphen-type="good"**.
- For **hyphenation="soft"** use **hyphen-mode="normal"** and **hyphen-type="explicit"**.
- For **hyphenation="none"** use **hyphen-mode="off"**.

table-style element

The **table-style** child element contains values from the **Tables tab** of the map editor.

Attribute	Meaning
frame-style	The table frame style. One of normal , bold or double .
frame-type	The type of table frame to draw. One of all , top , bottom , topbot , sides or none .
top-margin	A measurement for the space above the table.
bottom-margin	A measurement for the space below the table.
left-margin	A measurement for the space to the left of the table.
cell-top	A measurement for the top cell indent.
cell-bottom	A measurement for the bottom cell indent.
cell-sides	A measurement for the cell side indents.

Attribute	Meaning
col-sep	A boolean for the default column separator.
row-sep	A boolean for the default row separator.
page-sep	A boolean for whether to draw the page break separator.
rule-width	A measurement for the width of table rules.
rule-color	The color of table rules.
bind-prev	A boolean for bind to current paragraph.
reset-margins	A boolean for ignoring the current left and right margins.

The **table-style** element may contain child elements called **head** and **body** to define the style of header and body rows. These elements can have the following attributes.

Attribute	Meaning
font-style	The font style for text. One of normal , bold , italic or bolditalic .
fill-color	The background color for cells.

box-style element

The **box-style** child element contains values from the **Box tab** of the map editor.

Attribute	Meaning
frame-style	The table frame style. One of normal , double or shadow .
frame-type	The type of table frame to draw. One of top , bottom , topbot , all , sides , none , left , right , sidetop or sidebot .
fixed-depth	A measurement to set a fixed depth for the box.
top-margin	A measurement for the space above the box.
bottom-margin	A measurement for the space below the box.
left-margin	A measurement for the space to the left of the box.
right-margin	A measurement for the space to the right of the box.
text-top	A measurement for the top indent.
text-bottom	A measurement for the bottom indent.
text-sides	A measurement for the side indents.
breakable	A boolean for whether this box can break across a page.
page-sep	A boolean for whether to draw the page break separator.
reset-margins	A boolean for ignoring the current left and right margins.
rule-width	A measurement for the weight of the box frame rules.
rule-color	The color of the box frame rules.
fill-color	The background color of the box.

image element

The **image** child element contains values from the **Image tab** of the map editor.

Attribute	Meaning
attribute	The name of the attribute defining the image location.
path	The path used to locate the image.
width	A measurement for the maximum image width.
depth	A measurement for the maximum image depth.
scale	A number for the scale of the image as a percentage.
rotate	A number for the image rotation in degrees.
defdpi	A number for the default resolution in dots per inch.
mindpi	A number for the minimum resolution in dots per inch.

custom-pre and custom-post elements

These two elements contain the content of the two fields on the **Custom tab**. They both contain character data.

convert element

This element contains style overrides for **secondary output formats**. It is ignored by the composition engine when creating paged output.

4.7.2 Importing a CSS stylesheet

TopLeaf provides a means of initializing the style for a publication by interpreting a CSS (Cascading Style Sheet) file. It is important to note that TopLeaf and CSS use different models for describing style, so it is not possible to do a full conversion. Instead, the mappings created represent a starting point from which more complete mappings can be developed.

The importer attempts to recover from syntax errors in the CSS file, as required by the CSS standard (<http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-CSS2>) but using the importer on invalid files may lead to unpredictable results. If a rule either cannot be recognised, or cannot be expressed as a TopLeaf mapping, it is silently ignored.

The importer only uses information from the CSS file, not the DTD (if any). This means that mappings may be created that refer to elements and/or attributes that are not in the DTD.

The importer can be run when a **publication is created** or by selecting **Import mappings** in the Mapping Editor. If any errors are encountered a dialog box will open with details of the problem.

Selectors

Only rules whose selectors can be converted into the format used by TopLeaf mappings will be read — all other rules are ignored. TopLeaf mappings can refer to any number of elements, using parent and ancestor relationships. Attribute selectors are only allowed on the lowest element in the hierarchy.

The following are examples of selectors that will *not* be processed:

- *** [lang=fr]** — must map a specific element
- **head1 + head2** — TopLeaf mappings are not context sensitive
- **chapter * title** — generic ancestor syntax not supported
- **head1.intro** — class syntax not supported

- **head1#chap3** — ID syntax not supported
- **head1[title]** — attribute value must be specified
- **head1[class=intro][style=stressed]** — multiple attribute values not supported
- **head1[class=intro]/title** — attribute selectors allowed only on element being mapped.

Note that TopLeaf generally provides alternate means of achieving the above functions. For example a CSS **head1[title]** effect could be achieved by the plain **head1** mapping in TopLeaf if a **head1[title="#IMPLIED"]** mapping is defined to handle tags where the attribute does not exist.

The importer recognizes the selector **\$document** (an XMetaL extension) for setting the document mapping. Note that this is not the same as the universal selector (*).

Cascading

CSS implements a *cascade* that allows several rules to apply to a particular element, with the more specific rules overriding the less specific ones. TopLeaf, on the other hand, only applies a single mapping to each element, which leads to a much simpler and easier to manage system.

The importer does a limited amount of processing to simulate the effect of cascading. For example, in the following two rules:

```
title {
    display: block;
    color: red;
}

chapter>title {
    font-weight: bold;
    color: green;
}
```

the information from the first rule is inherited by the second, except where there is a conflict. The end result is as if the two rules were specified as follows:

```
title {
    display: block;
    color: red;
}

chapter>title {
    font-weight: bold;
    color: green;
    display: block;
}
```

Importing other CSS stylesheets

An **@import** rule that specifies a stylesheet with a relative URI and does not specify any media is processed by including the text of the Stylesheet at that point. Note that this method is not what is described in the specification, but will give the same result in most cases.

The standard says that rules in the source stylesheet take precedence over rules in an imported stylesheet. Since the importer uses the last rule it sees for a given selector, the same effect is achieved.

Note that the importer ignores **!important** for determining rule precedence.

Font names

Fonts are handled very differently in CSS and TopLeaf. Since CSS is designed to facilitate delivery to multiple media, it allows for the specification of a list of fonts from which the renderer chooses the

most appropriate. TopLeaf, on the other hand, is capable of much more precise formatting which requires a specific font to be selected.

For any given mapping, the importer either selects a specific font, or leaves it to be inherited from the ancestor elements. The following table shows how fonts are selected. Each string in the **font-family** list is compared in turn against the values in the first column (ignoring case). If the string starts with the value in the first column, then the font name in the second column is used. The first successful match determines the font. If there are no matches, the mapping inherits the font name from its ancestors.

Match String	Font Used
serif	Times New Roman
sans	Arial
monospace	Courier New
times	Times New Roman
arial	Arial
courier	Courier New

Generated text

Text created using the **:before** and **:after** pseudo-elements is generated in TopLeaf using the pre- and post-content properties of the mapping. If the rule which generates the text contains only a **content** property, the text is inserted directly into the content box of the appropriate mapping. If the rule contains other properties that require mapping (for example, **display: block;**) then a custom marker is created for the generated content. For example, a rule with selector **procedure>step:before** could generate a custom marker called **%Before_ProcedureStep**.

The converter attempts to convert Unicode escapes (hexadecimal digits following a \) in generated content into XML character references. Note that the CSS2 specification requires that whitespace following a Unicode escape is part of the character unless there are exactly 6 hexadecimal digits. Some CSS processors incorrectly include the terminating whitespace as part of the content.

The following conversions of generated content take place:

- runs of whitespace are replaced by the **<space breakable="yes"/>** directive
- a line break character (for example, "\A") is replaced by the **<break/>** directive
- a non-breaking space character (for example, "\A0") is replaced by the **<space breakable="no"/>** directive
- an attribute function (for example, "attr(style)") is replaced by an attribute reference (e.g. **{@style}**)
- limited support for the "counter()" function is implemented (see below)

Counters are supported in generated text, but only with "decimal" style. The **counter-reset** and **counter-increment** properties are recognized.

Nested counters are simulated by using the **<stack/>** directive to implement the **counter-reset** property. This will yield the same result as CSS when each element that emits a counter has a reset property in its parent.

Recognized properties

The properties recognized by the importer are:

- **display**
- **font-family** (but see [Section 4.7.2](#))

- **font-size**
- **font-style** (italic only)
- **font-weight** (bold only)
- **text-decoration** (underline only)
- **margin-top**
- **margin-bottom**
- **margin-left**
- **margin-right**
- **text-align** (left, right, center or justify only)
- **color**
- **border** (solid only)
- **border-style** (solid only)
- **list-style-type** (only if the rule has “display: list-item”)
- **white-space** (pre only, if display is block)
- **page-break-before** (always or avoid only)
- **page-break-after** (always or avoid only)
- **page-break-inside** (avoid only)
- **counter-reset**
- **counter-increment**

For properties that define a measurement, the property will only be recognized if it defines an absolute value. Measurements with a unit of **em** or **ex** are ignored. A unit of **px** (pixels) is treated the same as **pt** (points).

4.8 Shared repositories

Since a repository is stored on the file system, it is possible to place a repository on a network or shared drive so that it is accessible to multiple users.

When a repository is shared it is important that all users have access to the same resources in order to produce consistent results.

This is particularly true for fonts. Fonts referenced in the **font configuration** must be installed on each machine that uses the repository, and must be installed in the same location on each machine. When using a shared repository it is strongly recommended that you disable the Automatically add new typefaces option in the **font configuration dialog** so you can control the typefaces that are available for use in stylesheets.

5. PDF creation

TopLeaf can render XML content directly into PDF documents without the need to create intermediate PostScript or to use special printer drivers. TopLeaf's built in PDF builder provides access to a wide range of configurable options, allowing you to easily control the content of your PDF documents.

5.1 PDF profiles

TopLeaf allows you to select a **profile** when creating a PDF. This lets you select a consistent set of options for a particular PDF usage. For example, you could set up the following two profiles:

- A profile called **online** for PDFs to be placed on your web server. This profile doesn't embed fonts (to reduce file size) and produces warnings about internal links that have no destination.
- A **print** profile for PDFs that are sent to a print shop. This selects CMYK colors, embedding for all fonts and disables bookmarks and links.

See [Section 10.5.10](#) for a description of the profile editor. Profiles are stored in the repository in a [configuration file](#).

Note:

The name of the profile used to create a PDF is stored in its metadata. If the PDF viewing application you are using is capable of displaying the metadata, look for **TopLeaf-Profile** in the **Extended PDF Properties**.

5.2 PDF and fonts

When a PDF is displayed (such as in the *Adobe Reader®*) text is rendered using one or more **fonts**. The application must select fonts based on information encoded in the PDF. If the font chosen matches the one that TopLeaf used when composing the pages, the user will see the text exactly as laid out by TopLeaf. If an exact match can't be found, the application will typically try to use a font similar to the original one. The results in such a situation are hard to predict — at best the text will be indistinguishable from the intended appearance; at worst it will be illegible. When delivering PDF documents, it is therefore prudent to ensure that you know exactly which fonts will be used to render the text.

There are two basic strategies for ensuring that the correct font is used:

- Use fonts that you know will be installed or available on every computer that will be used to display the PDF.
- Include the font information in the PDF so it will always be available. This is also known as **embedding** the font in the PDF.

The PDF specification requires that all PDF applications include a number of “standard” fonts. This means that if you restrict your mappings to use only the typefaces **Times**, **Arial** and **Courier** you can be confident that the PDF will always use the correct font, and there is no need to worry about font embedding. If you look at the standard [font configuration](#), you'll notice that the fonts for these typefaces are set to “never embed” to reflect this fact.

While it might seem that the safest strategy would be to embed every font, it's worth noting that font descriptions are typically quite large, and can therefore have a significant effect on the size of the resulting PDF.

Font embedding is controlled by both the [PDF profile](#) chosen when the PDF is created, and by the [font configuration](#) settings for the fonts used during composition. Regardless of the settings, however, if characters outside the 8-bit “standard Latin” character set defined by the PDF standard

are rendered using the font, then all or part of the font will be embedded. This is to ensure portability of the PDF (the PDF standard predates unicode, and has no intrinsic method for representing all of the Unicode characters).

While many fonts can be freely used, some must only be used within the terms of the manufacturer's licence. These terms may prohibit the embedding of a font in a PDF, since this may allow a recipient of the PDF to use the font without compensating the manufacturer. TrueType fonts can include information about whether a font may be embedded; TopLeaf will not embed a font if this information indicates that embedding is not permitted.

Note:

There is no need to embed any fonts that correspond to the PDF "standard" fonts. However, some PDF consumers, or those with older applications, may insist that you embed all fonts in PDFs. In this case, use a **PDF profile** with the "embed always" option selected.

Selecting this option forces the PDF to embed the local TrueType fonts into the PDF, and to use them rather than the standard fonts.

5.3 Bookmarks

A PDF can contain **bookmarks** that appear in a separate area of the viewing application (these are sometimes referred to as "outlines").

A PDF created by TopLeaf will contain bookmarks if:

- the stylesheet generates bookmark entries; and
- the **profile** has the Enable bookmarks option selected.

The default mode of operation is to create bookmarks that mirror the table of contents. If you assign content to **TOC levels** on the mapping **Content tab** corresponding bookmarks will also be created. Note that bookmarks are created even if you don't include the **generated table of contents** in the output.

If you need to create bookmarks that don't match the table of contents, you can use the `<bookmark-properties/>` command to select "manual" bookmark creation. In this mode bookmarks are only created by using the `<bookmark>` command in a **user customisation**

Bookmarks must follow a strict hierarchical sequence. For example, all of the level 3 bookmarks must have a level 2 parent. The PDF creator will fill any "gaps" in the hierarchy with unnamed bookmarks and generate warning messages.

5.4 Watermarks

It is often necessary to apply a "watermark" or "stamp" to the pages of a PDF. A common reason for this is to identify a provisional document by stamping each page with a message such as "DRAFT" or "PRELIMINARY".

TopLeaf provides two different methods for achieving this:

1. By using an overlay fixed block to place the watermark on the page and controlling its content with mappings.
2. By defining the watermark to be used in the PDF profile.

Each of these methods has different capabilities and limitations. The following table compares the two approaches.

Using overlay fixed blocks	Using a PDF profile
Requires changing layout and mappings.	Layout and mappings are not affected.
Enabling and disabling the watermark requires changes to the data composed by TopLeaf.	Watermark is controlled by selecting the appropriate profile; data is not affected.
Watermarks may vary depending on the page content.	Watermarks may be selected by page number, but not page content.
Some page content may obscure part or all of the watermark.	Watermark can be placed either over or under page content.
No transparency or blending is supported.	All of the transparency and content blending allowed in a PDF is supported.
Text can only be rotated by multiples of 90 degrees (other rotations can only be achieved by creating a graphic from the text).	Text can be rotated by any angle.
Any font may be used for text.	Only standard PDF fonts (Helvetica, Times, Courier) are supported.
Must be positioned within the print area defined in the layout.	Can appear anywhere on the page.

To control the watermarks that are applied when a profile is selected, choose the [Watermarks](#) tab in the **profile editor**.

5.5 Viewer preferences

A PDF can contain information telling a viewing application how it should be displayed. For more information, consult the relevant documentation from Adobe. The following is a summary of the preferences supported by TopLeaf.

Viewer preferences can either be set in the **PDF profile** or by setting values for **metadata variables** in the mappings.

Page layout The page layout to be used when the document is opened:

Single Page	Display one page at a time.
One Column	Display the pages in one column.
2 Col Left	Display the pages in two columns, with odd-numbered pages on the left.
2 Col Right	Display the pages in two columns, with odd-numbered pages on the right.
2 Page Left	Display the pages two at a time, with odd-numbered pages on the left (only for PDF 1.5 or later).
2 Page Right	Display the pages two at a time, with odd-numbered pages on the right (only for PDF 1.5 or later).

Page mode Specifies how the document should be displayed when opened:

None	Neither document outline nor thumbnail images visible.
------	--

Bookmarks	Document outline (bookmarks) visible.
Thumbnails	Page thumbnail images visible.
Full Screen	Full-screen mode, with no menu bar, window controls, or any other window visible.
Opt Content	Optional content group panel visible (only for PDF 1.5 or later).
Attachments	Attachments panel visible (only for PDF 1.6 or later).

Non-fullscreen mode The document's page mode, specifying how to display the document on exiting full-screen mode. The values are as for **Page mode**.

Reading direction The predominant reading order for text, either left to right or right to left.

Hide toolbar A flag specifying whether to hide the viewer application's tool bars when the document is active.

Hide menubar A flag specifying whether to hide the viewer application's menu bar when the document is active.

Hide window UI A flag specifying whether to hide user interface elements in the document's window (such as scroll bars and navigation controls), leaving only the document's contents displayed.

Fit window A flag specifying whether to resize the document's window to fit the size of the first displayed page.

Center window A flag specifying whether to position the document's window in the center of the screen.

Show document title A flag specifying whether the window's title bar should display the document title taken from the Title entry in the document metadata. If False, the title bar should instead display the name of the PDF file containing the document.

5.6 Security settings

PDF security can be controlled by either the selected **PDF profile** or by setting **metadata variables**. In the event of a conflict, the metadata value will be used.

In order to enable security settings, you must supply a **master** password (sometimes called the **owner** password). This password needs to be supplied in order to change the security of the document.

It is also possible to set a **user** password which must be supplied in order to open the document (this can only be set by using a **metadata variable**).

The individual security settings are listed below.

Copy	Allow text and graphics to be extracted from the document (for example, copy them to the clipboard).
Print	Allow high-quality printing.
Print degraded	Allow printing in a possibly low quality which would make it difficult to scan an exact copy of the document. This has no effect if high-quality printing is allowed.
Modify	Allow the contents of the document to be modified.
Annotate	Allow text annotations to be added or modified and interactive form fields to be filled in. If modification is allowed, this also allows form fields to be added and modified (including signature fields).

- Fill in forms** Allow interactive form fields to be filled in, even if modification of the document is not allowed.
- Assembly** Allow pages to be inserted, deleted and rotated; also allow bookmarks and thumbnails to be created.
- Screen reading** Allow text and graphics to be extracted in support of accessibility to users with disabilities or for other purposes.

5.7 Metadata

A PDF can store a number of **metadata** values, such as a document title or the name of the author.

TopLeaf allows you to set a number of metadata values in the mappings. Metadata names beginning with “pdf.” are used to set values in the PDF or to control aspects of PDF creation. See the [Mapping Guide](#) for information on setting metadata variables. A list of the property names can be found in [Section 5.7.6](#).

5.7.1 Page labels

PDF pages can be labeled using a number of separate ranges, each with its own numbering style and optional prefix.

To create a labeling range, define a metadata value named **pdf.pagelabel.startrange.N**, where **N** is the number of the first page in the range (starting from 1). The value of this variable has three parts, separated by “/”:

- The first part is required, and is the first page number to use in the range. This is usually 1.
- The second optional part determines the numbering style. Use one of the following. The default is “decimal”.

decimal	decimal numbers
alpha or lalpha	lower-case alphabetic
ualpha	upper-case alphabetic
roman or lroman	lower-case roman numerals
uroman	upper-case roman numerals

- The third optional part is a prefix string.

If the variable value does not conform to the required format it will be ignored. An invalid numbering style name will be treated as **decimal**.

For example, the following definitions:

```
<set var="Label1" meta="pdf.pagelabel.startrange.1"
string="1/roman"/>
<set var="Label7" meta="pdf.pagelabel.startrange.7" string="1"/>
<set var="Label93" meta="pdf.pagelabel.startrange.93"
string="1/decimal/Appendix-"/>
```

number the first 6 pages with lower-case roman numerals, reset the numbering to 1 for page 7, and label the final pages starting with “Appendix-1”.

5.7.2 Additional PDF files

Metadata values can be used to create additional PDF files from selected pages. This does not affect the creation of the *main* PDF file, which always contains all of the composed pages.

Note:

The creation of additional PDF files is suppressed when creating a PDF that does not contain all composed pages. This occurs when:

- the “Changed pages only” option is selected; or
- a specific range of pages is selected in the Create PDF dialog; or
- the **PDFMAP** API call is used to create a PDF from a specified list of pages.

To create an additional PDF, create a metadata value with the name **pdf.output.N** where **N** is “1” for the first file, “2” for the second, and so on. The numbering must be consecutive and start from 1; any break in the sequence will cause subsequent values to be ignored.

Each metadata value has the form **PAGES:FILE** where **PAGES** is a comma-separated list of inclusive page ranges and **FILE** is the path to the PDF file to be created.

Page ranges must use ordinal page numbers (i.e. starting from 1) and consist of either a single number or two numbers separated by ‘-’. If the second number is omitted the range continues to include the final page.

If the file path is relative, it is resolved relative to the folder where the *main* PDF file is created.

The additional PDF files are created using the same profile as the main PDF file. The only restrictions on additional PDF files are:

- Links to other pages are suppressed — regardless of whether the page is in the PDF being created. This does not affect links to other targets, such as internet URLs.
- Bookmarks are disabled.

Example

It is necessary to publish a large book as two volumes. The PDF for both volumes should include the pages from the front matter, which contains the title page and table of contents.

If the front matter is contained in pages 1 through 14, and the first chapter in the second volume is on page 491, the following commands will create suitable metadata values:

```
<set var="Vol1" meta="pdf.output.1" string="1-490:Vol1.pdf"/>
<set var="Vol2" meta="pdf.output.2" string="1-14,491-:Vol2.pdf"/>
```

When TopLeaf is instructed to create a PDF, three files will be created in the same folder. The first will contain all of the pages and have the name selected by the user. The other two will be called “Vol1.pdf” and “Vol2.pdf”.

5.7.3 Omitting pages

Metadata values can be used to omit some pages from the PDF. The metadata names are:

- **pdf.omit.page.N** to omit pages by page number; or
- **pdf.omit.id.N** to omit pages by page identifier.

In both cases **N** is “1” for the first page to omit, “2” for the second, and so on. The numbering must be consecutive and start from 1; any break in the sequence will cause subsequent values to be ignored. The value of the variable is either a page number (starting with 1) or an identifier string, as appropriate.

Pages can only be omitted by number when all pages are being processed (so, for example, this is ignored when creating a “changed pages only” PDF).

Warning:

Since PDF links are based on page numbers, links may no longer work correctly when some pages are omitted.

5.7.4 JavaScript links

Some PDF viewers include a scripting engine which can run a script when the user clicks on a link. A link created by setting [Link to Target using attribute](#) in a mapping can execute a JavaScript program if the attribute value starts with a nominated prefix string. The prefix value is set with the **pdf.javascript.prefix** metadata value.

For example, the following could be used to set the prefix in the **\$document** mapping:

```
<set var="JsPrefix" meta="pdf.javascript.prefix" string="js:"/>
```

and the following to create a link that opens the print dialog:

```
<Action script="js:this.print()">PRINT</Action>
```

For more information on JavaScript support in PDFs, visit www.adobe.com.

5.7.5 Linking to named destinations

Links can be created that refer to a named destination in the current document by defining a prefix that identifies this type of link. The prefix value is set with the **pdf.ndlink.prefix** metadata value.

For example, the following could be used to set the prefix in the **\$document** mapping:

```
<set var="NdPrefix" meta="pdf.ndlink.prefix" string="nd:"/>
```

This will remove the “nd:” from the link value and use the remainder as the name to link to.

5.7.6 List of metadata properties

Metadata property	Description	Permitted values (any text unless otherwise specified)
pdf.title	Document title	
pdf.keywords	Document keywords list	
pdf.author	Document author name	
pdf.subject	Document subject	
pdf.creator	Document creator application	
pdf.view.page-layout	Specifies the page layout to be used when the document is opened.	single-page one-column two-column-left two-column-right two-page-left two-page-right
pdf.view.page-mode	Specifies which controls or menus are visible when viewing.	none outlines thumbs fullscreen use-oc use-attach

Metadata property	Description	Permitted values (any text unless otherwise specified)
pdf.view.non-fullscreen-page-mode	The page mode to use on exiting full-screen mode.	none outlines thumbs fullscreen use-oc use-attach
pdf.view.reading-direction	Specifies the predominant reading order for text.	l2r r2l
pdf.view.hide-toolbar	Specifies whether to hide the viewer application's tool bars when the document is active.	true false
pdf.view.hide-menubar	Specifies whether to hide the viewer application's menu bar when the document is active.	true false
pdf.view.hide-windowui	Specifies whether to hide user interface elements in the document's window (such as scroll bars and navigation controls), leaving only the document's contents displayed.	true false
pdf.view.fit-window	Specifies whether to resize the document's window to fit the size of the first displayed page.	true false
pdf.view.center-window	Specifies whether to position the document's window in the center of the screen.	true false
pdf.view.display-doctitle	Specifies whether to display the document's title in the top bar.	true false
pdf.bookmark.title	If this is present, a top-level bookmark is created using the value of the variable for the bookmark text. The bookmark selects the first page when activated.	
pdf.profile.default	This sets the default name of the profile to use if the PDF creation does not explicitly select a profile.	
pdf.sec.master-password	Sets the master (owner) password required to change security settings.	

Metadata property	Description	Permitted values (any text unless otherwise specified)
pdf.sec.user-password	Sets the user password required to open the document.	
pdf.sec.can-copy	Determines whether text and graphics can be extracted from the document.	true false
pdf.sec.can-print	Determines whether high-quality printing is allowed.	true false
pdf.sec.can-printdegraded	Determines whether printing is allowed, possibly at a low quality that makes scanning difficult.	true false
pdf.sec.can-modify	Determines whether the contents of the document can be modified.	true false
pdf.sec.can-annotate	Determines whether comments and form fields can be added and modified.	true false
pdf.sec.can-fillforms	Determines whether interactive form fields can be modified.	true false
pdf.sec.can-assemble	Determines whether page insertion and deletion, and bookmark and thumbnail creation is allowed.	true false
pdf.sec.can-readscreen	Determines whether text can be extracted for use in accessibility support (e.g. screen readers).	true false
pdf.pagelabel.startrange. <i>N</i>	Start a label range for page <i>N</i> .	See Section 5.7.1 .
pdf.output. <i>N</i>	Create an additional PDF file.	See Section 5.7.2 .
pdf.omit.page. <i>N</i>	Omit a page by number.	See Section 5.7.3 .
pdf.omit.id. <i>N</i>	Omit a page by identifier.	See Section 5.7.3 .
pdf.bookmarks.always	Enable bookmarks when not all pages are included.	true false
pdf.javascript.prefix	Set a prefix to identify JavaScript links.	See Section 5.7.4 .
pdf.ndlink.prefix	Set a prefix to identify named destination links.	See Section 5.7.5 .

6. Contents, indexes and other generated data

TopLeaf provides facilities for creating data files for indexes, tables of contents and other generated material. When using this feature it is usually necessary to run the composition several times so that the generated content can be included. The `<readgen/>` command provides a means of including generated content as well as controlling multiple composition runs.

6.1 Tables of contents

A table of contents (hereafter abbreviated to *TOC*) is a list of headings (possibly structured) and the page labels (folios) on which they appear. The distinguishing feature of a TOC is that the structure and order of entries reflects the structure and ordering of the document.

6.1.1 Entries and levels

All TOCs consist of a series of *entries*. Each entry typically contains a title and a page label (folio). In addition, each entry occupies a particular *level* in the TOC hierarchy. A simple list of chapters has only one level, but more complex TOCs tend to have a structure reflecting that of the original document. The following TOC fragment has three levels:

— Table of Contents —

1.	Prelude to War	
1.1	Legacy of World War 1	2
1.2	The Treaty of Versailles	7
1.3	Developments in Germany	11
1.3.1	The Weimar Republic	12
1.3.2	Economic Collapse	20
1.3.3	The rise of Nazism	25
1.4	Conquest	41
1.4.1	The Rhineland	44
1.4.2	Austria	52
1.4.3	Czechoslovakia	61

In the simplest case, the mapping that produces the heading (for example, **chapter/title**) can also create the TOC entry. This is done on the **Content tab** of the mapping.

Tick the **Assign to TOC level** box and select a level. Up to 9 levels are provided, though it is rare to use more than three or four in practice.

The content of any occurrence of the mapped element will be assigned to a TOC entry, including any internal tagging which may be present. The following sections will explain how to make use of this captured material.

For more complex situations, such as where the TOC text is not always the same as the heading, you may need to insert a **custom marker** into the custom content of the mapping.

For example, say the **title** element has an attribute which has the value **no** when the heading should not appear in the TOC. In the mapping for the title, set the **Scan element content** option and place the following in a **user customisation**:

```
<if var="@toc" target="no" test="not-same">
  <Toc1><content/></Toc>
</if>
```

The **%Toc1** custom mapping can then be used to create the TOC entry.

6.1.2 TOCs and PDF

In a PDF rendition of a document it is common to mirror the TOC in the **bookmarks**, which provide an interactive display of the document structure.

See **Section 5.3** for more information about PDF bookmarks.

6.1.3 Including the TOC file

The recommended way of including the generated TOC information is by using the **<readgen/>** command. For example:

```
<readgen type="toc" passes="3"/>
```

The number of passes required can depend on a number of factors, such as how the TOC pages are numbered:

- If the document has a single sequence of page numbers, then the inclusion of the TOC will affect the numbering of the following pages. This means that at least 3 passes are required. After the TOC is included in the second pass it may affect the numbering for following pages, so an additional pass is required to make it correct.
- If the page numbering resets after the TOC, then the additional pass is not required. This is the reason that many books use a separate numbering scheme for the front matter (such as **i**, **ii**, **iii**, ...) and start numbering the body of the document from one.

The TOC file can also be created from the workstation interface by selecting **File » Export » Table of contents » Partition**.

Alternatively, you can arrange for the TOC file to be created automatically via the **Partition Properties dialog** using the **Exports** tab.

6.1.4 TOC file format

The following fragment shows the structure of a typical TOC file produced by TopLeaf:

```
<tl:toc2>
  <tl:tocline>
    <tl:title id="tl:Mapman.27" >The <emph>Font</emph> Tab</tl:title>
    <tl:folio id="tl:Mapman.27" >35</tl:folio>
  </tl:tocline>
  <tl:toc3>
    <tl:tocline>
      <tl:title id="tl:Mapman.103" >Selecting a Font</tl:title>
      <tl:folio id="tl:Mapman.103" >35</tl:folio>
    </tl:tocline>
  </tl:toc3>
```



```
<tl:toc3>
  <tl:tocline>
    <tl:title id="tl:Mapman.269" >Font Characteristics</tl:title>
    <tl:folio id="tl:Mapman.269" >37</tl:folio>
  </tl:tocline>
</tl:toc3>
</tl:toc2>
```

Each TOC level has a **tl:tocline** element containing a title and a page label (folio). The title will contain any child elements that were present in the original data.

Custom markers in the title will be identified by the **__MMCT:** prefix. When these are processed they will trigger custom mappings that use the normal % prefix.

The inclusion of the original title markup allows effects (such as emphasis or subscripting) to be reproduced in the TOC if desired. If you do not want such effects preserved, define a mapping (for example, **tl:title/emph**) which does nothing. This will override the default behavior of the tag in question.

A common requirement when formatting a TOC is to place the page labels at the right margin, sometimes preceded by leader dots. The **<fill>** command provides an easy way to do this.

The **id** attributes can be used to create a link to the point in the data that generated the TOC entry. If the element contains an attribute called **idtype** with value **auto** it means that the **id** attribute value was generated automatically. Note that automatically-generated link values may change depending on the preceding content, so additional composition passes may be required when using them. See [Section 11.4.14](#) for more information.

6.1.5 Content-based TOCs

Some publications, especially looseleaf services, have TOCs which are not based on page numbers. Instead they will refer to a paragraph number, or some other fixed ID which is permanently assigned to the entry in question thus:

Tax Avoidance	[10.500]
False returns	[10.510]
Offshore holdings.....	[10.520]
Fees & Penalties	[10.600]
Late payment.....	[10.610]

You can use TopLeaf to create such a TOC as follows:

- Make sure that the element being assigned to each TOC entry includes the paragraph number as a sub-element. If this is not the case, assemble a custom marker with the required structure and assign it instead.
- The **<tl:folio>** elements will still appear in the TOC file, so you have to use the **Content tab** to suppress these folios.
- Once the folios are suppressed you can map the internal structure of the **<tl:title>** elements to produce the desired appearance.

6.2 Index generation

The main difference between a Table of Contents and an Index is that the latter is typically composed of multiple entries that need to be sorted into alphabetical order. In addition, there may be multiple items with the same name that must be merged into a single entry.

6.2.1 Entries and levels

All Indexes consist of a series of *entries*. Each entry typically contains a title and a page label (folio). In addition, each entry occupies a particular *level* in the Index hierarchy. The following Index fragment has three levels:

<i>Company directors</i>	
Duties & Responsibilities	
Attendance at meetings	7, 64
Corporate governance	7, 110, 224
Personal liability	68
Penalties	
Conflict of interest	159
Insider trading	157
Lack of due diligence	68, 226

You can assign the content of any element in your source document to an Index entry. This is done on the **Content tab** of the mapping.

Tick the **Assign to Index level** box and select a level. Up to 9 levels are provided, though it is rare to use more than three or four in practice.

The content of any occurrence of the mapped element will be assigned to an Index entry, including any internal tagging which may be present. The following sections will explain how to make use of this captured material. It may be necessary to transform the content and use a **custom marker** to assign the index data.

6.2.2 Index entry markup

In order to create the correct hierarchy, it is necessary to include *all* the levels to which an entry belongs. For example, a section on TopLeaf box fills might have the following index entries in the source document:

```
<section>
  <heading>Box Color Fills</heading>
  <ihead1><emph>Box</emph> tab</ihead1>
    <ihead2>Effects</ihead2>
      <ihead3>color fills</ihead3>
    <ihead1>Stylistic Effects</ihead1>
      <ihead2>Backgrounds</ihead2>
        <ihead3>box color fills</ihead3>
      <para>To fill a box with ...</para>
</section>
```

Two rules need to be followed:

- the index levels must be presented in the correct order (highest to lowest);
- do *not* nest the index elements as all nesting is handled automatically.

Note:

If the markup uses nested index definitions these must be transformed into separate elements before they can be processed by TopLeaf. The pre-processing used for **DITA** is an example of this.

6.2.3 Including the index file

The recommended way of including the generated index information is by using the `<readgen/>` command. For example:

```
<readgen type="index"/>
```

In most cases the default number of passes (2) is suitable for index incorporation.

The index file can also be created from the workstation interface by selecting File » Export » Index » Partition.

Alternatively, you can arrange for the index file to be created automatically via the **Partition Properties dialog** using the Exports tab.

6.2.4 Index file format

The following fragment shows the structure of a typical index file produced by TopLeaf before the sort/merge:

```
<tl:ndx1>
  <tl:ndxline>
    <tl:title id="tl:Mapman.27" ><emph>Box</emph> tab</tl:title>
    <tl:folio id="tl:Mapman.27" >62</tl:folio>
  </tl:ndxline>
  <tl:ndx2>
    <tl:ndxline>
      <tl:title id="tl:Mapman.28" >Effects</tl:title>
      <tl:folio id="tl:Mapman.28" >62</tl:folio>
    </tl:ndxline>
    <tl:ndx3>
      <tl:ndxline>
        <tl:title id="tl:Mapman.29" >color fills</tl:title>
        <tl:folio id="tl:Mapman.29" >62</tl:folio>
      </tl:ndxline>
    </tl:ndx3>
  </tl:ndx2>
</tl:ndx1>
```

Each index level has a `tl:ndxline` element containing the title and a page label (folio). The title will contain any child elements that were present in the original data.

Custom markers in the title will be identified by the `__MMCT:` prefix. When these are processed they will trigger custom mappings that use the normal `%` prefix.

The inclusion of the original entry markup allows effects (such as emphasis or subscripting) to be reproduced in the index if desired. If you do not want such effects preserved, define a mapping (for example, `tl:title/emph`) which does nothing. This will override the default behavior of the tag in question.

The `id` attributes can be used to create a link to the point in the data that generated the index entry. If the element contains an attribute called `idtype` with value `auto` it means that the `id` attribute value was generated automatically. Note that automatically-generated link values may change depending on the preceding content, so additional composition passes may be required when using them. See **Section 11.4.14** for more information.

6.2.5 Index post-processing

In the majority of cases, a TopLeaf index file requires additional post-processing to achieve the desired format. There are typically three steps involved:

- *sorting* the entries into the correct (normally alphabetical) order;
- *merging* multiple similar entries into a single composite entry (with multiple folios);
- *suppressing* folios where not required (eg. in higher levels).

To handle the above steps, TopLeaf provides a built-in index sort/merge facility, which is described in detail in the following section.

6.2.6 Index sorting

Each index is regarded as a series of entries, where an entry consists of a `<tl:ndxN>` (N=1 to 9) which in turn consists of a `<tl:title>` (entry text) and a `<tl:folio>` (page reference). Note that `<tl:folio>` is honored only at the lowest level of each entry group, higher level entries are generally regarded as headings only.

By default, TopLeaf leaves your index unsorted. To obtain a sorted index, add the `<index-sorter>` command to the pre-content box of your `$document` mapping. This command may contain the following attributes:

- lang** This is a two-letter language code which determines the sorting rules to use. If this is omitted the language/locale set by the content will be used.
- locale** This is a locale code in the form “xx-XX” which determines the sorting rules to use. If this is omitted the language/locale set by the content will be used.
- ignore-case** If this is **yes** (the default) sorting of index entries is case-insensitive. If it is **no** upper-case names will sort before lower-case.
- ignore-space** If this is **yes** (the default) spaces are ignored for the purposes of sorting. For example, setting this to **no** will cause “et cetera” to sort before “eta”.
- ignore-punc** If this is **yes** (the default) punctuation characters are ignored when sorting. For example, if punctuation is ignored “AC/DC” will be sorted as if it were “ACDC”.
- numeric-sort** If this is **yes** (the default) strings of digits are sorted by their numeric value rather than as a sequence of characters. For example, setting this to **yes** will produce “9”, “13”, “124” while selecting **no** will produce “124”, “13”, “9”.
- sortkey-tag** This is one or more tag names (separated by commas) that are used to set the **sort key** for the entry. If one of these tags is found, it is removed and its content is used to determine the position of the index item.
- startrange-tag** This defines a tag used to create the first page of a range. See [below](#) for more information.
- endrange-tag** This defines a tag used to create the last page of a range. See [below](#) for more information.
- make-groups** If this is **yes** (the default) the sorted output will contain information to indicate when a new group of entries starts. See [below](#) for more information.
- group-base-letter** If this is **yes** (the default) grouping is determined by the unaccented (“base”) first letter of the entry. For example, if this is yes then “Österreich” will be grouped under “o”.
- see-level** This is the index level used for “see” items. See [below](#) for more information.
- seealso-level** This is the index level used for “see also” items. See [below](#) for more information.
- seelink-enable** This controls whether markup is added to facilitate the creation of links for “see” and “see also” items. The default of **no** does not create links. If this is **yes** links are

created if the target item is found. If it is **all** links are also added if the target does not exist. See [below](#) for more information.

seelink-leveltag This is the name of the tag used to separate levels in the “see” and “see also” text.

seelink-prefix This is a prefix added to the link/target strings used for “see” and “see also” links. If you use hyperlinks elsewhere you can set this to a value which will make these distinct from other link strings.

Note:

Older stylesheets may use the deprecated `<index-sort>` command. This has less functionality than the new command, and is not suitable for languages other than English.

Grouping

If grouping is selected the sorter also inserts an element to identify when the first letter of the top-level entry changes, for example:

```
<tl:grouping letter="a"/>
```

In most cases the **letter** attribute is a single lower-case letter. If the first character is not alphabetic, the **letter** attribute value will be empty and a **type** attribute will be added with the value “numeric” if the first character of the index entry is a digit, or “symbol” if the entry starts with some other character (such as punctuation).

Ranges

A range indicates an inclusive range of pages that relate to the index item. To create a range there must be a start item that determines the first page, and an end item for the last page. These two items are connected by a **range key** which is a string unique to that range.

To create ranges, you must define values for the **startrange-tag** and **endrange-tag** attributes of the **index-sorter** command. Both of these attributes contain either a tag name, or a tag name and attribute name separated by ‘@’. The range key value is the text of the element if just a tag name is given, or the attribute value if both are specified.

The text that appears in the sorted index is taken from the start item. The content of the end item is ignored.

A range appears as a single **tl:folio** element. The end page is contained in a **tl:endrange** element within the **tl:folio**.

For example, using the following command:

```
<index-sorter startrange-tag="range" endrange-tag="end@id"/>
```

and these level-1 index values in the data:

```
<index1>farm animals<range>XYZ</range></index1>
...
<index1><end id="XYZ"/></index1>
```

might produce the following in the sorted index:

```
<tl:ndx1><tl:ndxline>
  <tl:title>farm animals</tl:title>
  <tl:folio>13<tl:endrange>27</tl:endrange></tl:folio>
</tl:ndxline></tl:ndx1>
```

See and See Also items

It’s common for an index to contain items that direct the reader to an alternate item, for example:

Bovines

See Cows

or to items that contain related information, such as:

Cows, **23, 29**

See *Also* Dairy farming

These are referred to below as “see” and “see also” items, respectively.

A common convention is that when a “see” item is present it should be the only item for that index item. However, the index sorter does not require that you follow this convention.

The index sorter allows you to reserve a level in the index hierarchy for each of these item types. The only restriction on the choice of number is that you may not use levels with a higher number for index entries. For example, if you choose level 3 for “see” items, then only levels 1 and 2 are available for use. The recommended approach is to use level 8 for “see” items and level 9 for “see also”.

You must define mappings that assign content to these levels in the **Content tab** of the mapping.

The index sorter generates the `<tl:ndx-see>` and `<tl:ndx-seealso>` elements to represent these items. The above examples would generate data like this:

```
<tl:ndx1>
  <tl:ndxline>
    <tl:title>Bovines</tl:title>
  </tl:ndxline>

  <tl:ndx-see>
    <tl:ndxline>
      <tl:title>Cows</tl:title>
    </tl:ndxline>
  </tl:ndx-see>
</tl:ndx1>

<tl:ndx1>
  <tl:ndxline>
    <tl:title>Cows</tl:title>
    <tl:folio id="tl:pub1177.26">23</tl:folio>
    <tl:folio id="tl:pub1177.41">29</tl:folio>
  </tl:ndxline>

  <tl:ndx-seealso>
    <tl:ndxline>
      <tl:title>Dairy farming</tl:title>
    </tl:ndxline>
  </tl:ndx-seealso>
</tl:ndx1>
```

The sorter can also add information into the generated index which makes it easy to create a link from a “see” or “see also” item to the referenced index item. To enable this, set the **seelink-enable** attribute to **yes** or **all**. Setting the attribute to **all** creates a link even if the target item cannot be found, so you can check for missing index items.

Links are created by making a sort key from the “see” text and locating the item with a matching sort key. If the reference is to a lower-level item, it is necessary to use a tag to identify the text of each lower level. Use the **seelink-leveltag** attribute to specify the name of the tag used.

A link is created by adding a **ref** attribute to the `<tl:ndx-see>` or `<tl:ndx-seealso>` element. The link target is created by adding an **id** attribute to the corresponding `<tl:ndxline>`. See the **Content tab** of the Mapping Guide for information on how to create links and targets from attribute values.

The following fragment shows an example of this, using `<level>` to identify the levels:

```
<tl:ndx1>
  <tl:ndxline>
    <tl:title>farming</tl:title>
  </tl:ndxline>

  <tl:ndx2>
    <tl:ndxline id="tl.see.000002">
      <tl:title>dairy</tl:title>
      <tl:folio id="tl:Template.25">2</tl:folio>
    </tl:ndxline>
  </tl:ndx2>
</tl:ndx1>

<tl:ndx1>
  <tl:ndxline>
    <tl:title>cows</tl:title>
  </tl:ndxline>

  <tl:ndx-see ref="tl.see.000002">
    <tl:ndxline>
      <tl:title>farming<level>dairy</level></tl:title>
    </tl:ndxline>
  </tl:ndx-see>
</tl:ndx1>
```

6.3 Cross referencing

The TopLeaf cross reference (Xref) facility is similar to **index generation**. The main difference is that Xref entries are independent rather than existing in a hierarchy.

Each Xref also contains information about how it was created, so different types of data can be easily extracted from the same file.

The Xref information can be used for a number of purposes, for example:

- adding the page number of the target to the text of a link, or
- creating a list of figures in the publication.

6.3.1 Marking up an Xref

Unlike contents or index entries, Xrefs have no internal nested structure. You can assign the content of any element in your source document to an Xref. This is done on the **Content tab** of the mapping.

Tick the **Assign to index level or XREF** box and select the **XREF** level.

The content of any occurrence of the mapped element will be assigned to an Xref entry, including any internal tagging which may be present. The following sections will explain how to make use of

this captured material. It may be necessary to use a transform and a **custom marker** to get the content into the required format.

6.3.2 Using the Xref file

The recommended way of including the generated Xref information is by using the `<readgen/>` command. For example:

```
<readgen type="xref"/>
```

The number of passes required will depend on how the information is being used.

The Xref file can also be created from the workstation interface by selecting File » Export » Xref » Partition.

Alternatively, you can arrange for the Xref file to be created automatically via the **Partition Properties dialog** using the Exports tab.

6.3.3 Xref file format

The following fragment shows the structure of a typical Xref file produced by TopLeaf:

```
<tl:xrefline class="title">
  <tl:title id="tl:Tutorial.19">Overview</tl:title>
  <tl:folio id="tl:Tutorial.19">2</tl:folio>
</tl:xrefline>
<tl:xrefline class="%Heading">
  <tl:title id="tl:Tutorial.56">The <ital>Preferred</ital>
Method</tl:title>
  <tl:folio id="tl:Tutorial.56">4</tl:folio>
</tl:xrefline>
```

Each Xref line contains a title and a page label (folio). Any internal tagging in the original entry is preserved, but distinguished by the absence of the TopLeaf namespace prefix (**tl:**).

The **class** attribute indicates the element which generated the Xref entry. If the entry was generated by a custom marker the name will be preceded by a %.

The inclusion of the original entry markup allows effects (such as emphasis or subscripting) to be reproduced in the output if desired. If you do not want such effects preserved, define a mapping (for example, **tl:xrefline//ital**) which does nothing. This will override the default behavior of the tag in question.

The **id** attributes can be used to create a link to the point in the data that generated the Xref entry. If the element contains an attribute called **idtype** with value **auto** it means that the **id** attribute value was generated automatically. Note that automatically-generated link values may change depending on the preceding content, so additional composition passes may be required when using them. See **Section 11.4.14** for more information.

6.3.4 Using Xrefs

If you are using the Xref file for a single purpose (such as creating a list of figures) the simplest approach is to include it at the appropriate place by inserting a `<readgen/>` command and add appropriate mappings to format the content.

If, however, you wish to use the Xref file for multiple purposes it is probably more convenient to process it as an **XML fragment**. This involves:

- Creating a mapping for **tl:xref** that scans and suppresses its content and assigns it to an appropriate variable:

```
<set var="XrefData" copy="element"/>
```

- Using the `<xmlproc/>` command to extract the required data at the appropriate place.

The **DITA/book** stylesheet included in the demonstrations has examples of this technique. See the **%AddPage** and **figurelist** mappings, for example.

6.4 Live pages and filing instructions

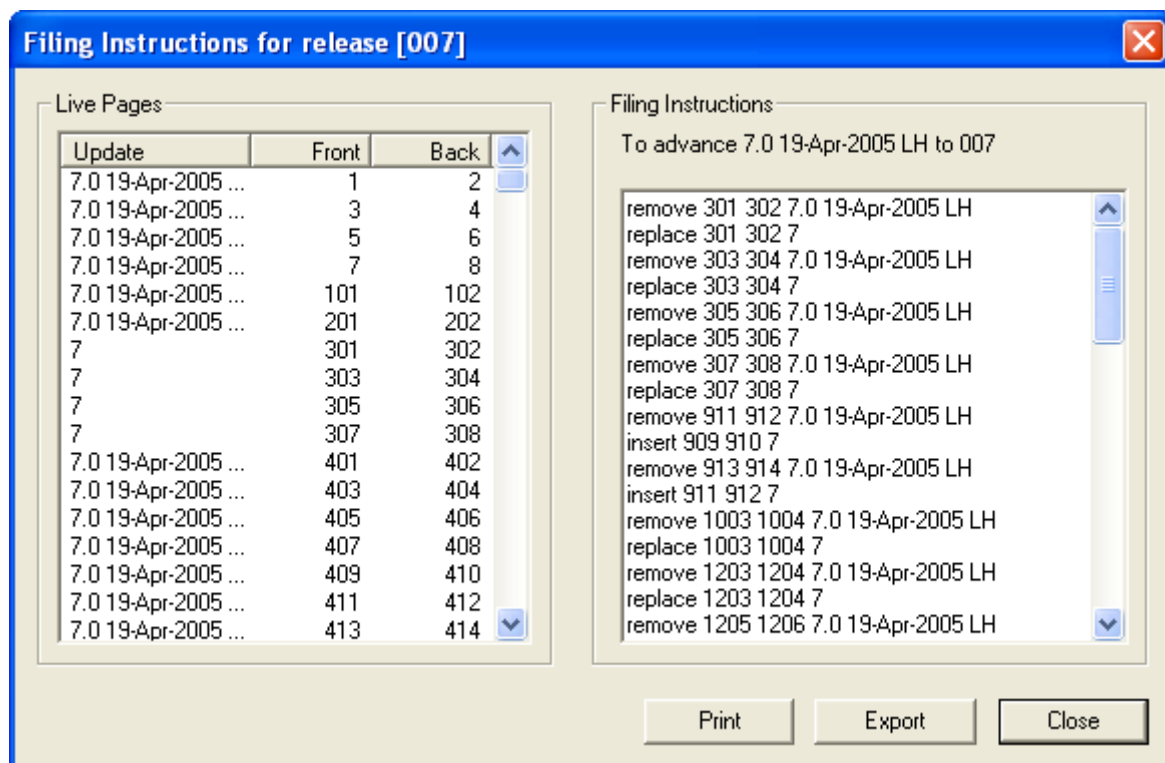
One of the most useful aspects of controlling releases with TopLeaf is the automatic generation of two lists:

- **Live pages list** — a list showing the folio, release number or string, and change status for every page or leaf in the release. This can be used within a distribution centre to construct a complete up to date release from stores of printed pages. It can also be used to verify that a document has been correctly updated to contain the latest version of every page.
- **Filing instructions** — a set of instructions for updating the previous release to the current release. This list shows the pages removed from the release, and any changed, or new pages added to the release.

6.4.1 Filing instructions

Each page is identified by a **release label** that indicates when that page or leaf was last changed or modified. The release label can assigned or **referenced** from a style sheet and then included in the rendered page output.

The List of Effective Pages can be viewed by clicking **File » Filing Instructions**.



6.4.2 Using the filing instructions file

The recommended way of including the generated filing instructions within a document is to use the **<readgen/>** command. For example:

```
<readgen type="filing"/>
```

You can save the list of effective pages as a separate XML, PDF or flat text file by clicking **File » Export » Filing Instructions**.

Alternatively, you can arrange for the file to be created automatically via the **Partition Properties** dialog using the **Exports** tab.

6.4.3 Filing instructions file format

The file begins with a list of `<tl:leaf>` elements that describe every leaf in the document showing its folios (front and back), its release string(s) and whether it is in the current release. After this a set of actions is given describing what needs to be done with each changed leaf: remove, remove/replace or insert. Note that for each existing leaf (for example, leaf 2/1,2/2), the previous release label ("UPDATE") is included to assist correct identification of the leaf to be removed.

The format is different depending on whether **full looseleaf** or **change pages** is being used.

In a full looseleaf publication, release labels are assigned to the leaf, and the `<tl:leaf>` element declares the leaf currency via the `relnum` and `relstr` attributes. The inclusion of a leaf in a release implies that both the front page and back page of the leaf were modified in the same release.

In a change pages publication, the currency of a page is determined by changes to the content of the page. The release information for each page is defined independently, with the `<tl:front>` and `<tl:back>` elements declaring the release status for the front and back pages of each leaf. It is entirely possible for the front page and back page of a leaf to have been modified in separate releases.

The following fragment shows the structure of a typical file produced by TopLeaf in looseleaf mode:

```
...
<tl:filing xmlns:tl="http://www.turnkey.com.au/toplevel/v7.0/filing"
parts="1" pages="644" >
<tl:partition path="Demonstrations/test" name="test" pages="22"
spage="1" >
<tl:release relnum="3" phase="update" >3</tl:release>
<tl:label>Demonstrations-test</tl:label>
<tl:live.list>
<tl:leaf type="live" relstr="UPDATE" relnum="2" current="0" >
<tl:front>1</tl:front><tl:back>2</tl:back>
</tl:leaf>
<tl:leaf type="live" relstr="REVISION" relnum="3" current="1" >
<tl:front>2/1</tl:front><tl:back>2/2</tl:back>
</tl:leaf>
<tl:leaf type="live" relstr="REVISION" relnum="3" current="1" >
<tl:front>2/2/1</tl:front><tl:back>2/2/2</tl:back>
</tl:leaf>
<tl:leaf type="live" relstr="UPDATE" relnum="2" current="0" >
<tl:front>2/3</tl:front><tl:back>2/4</tl:back>
</tl:leaf>
<tl:leaf type="live" relstr="INITIAL" relnum="0" current="0" >
<tl:front>3</tl:front><tl:back>4</tl:back>
</tl:leaf>
...
<tl:leaf type="live" relstr="UPDATE" relnum="2" current="0" >
<tl:front>101</tl:front><tl:back>102</tl:back>
</tl:leaf>
</tl:live.list>
<tl:filing.list>
<tl:instruction>
<tl:action type="remove" >
<tl:front>2/1</tl:front><tl:back>2/2</tl:back>
<tl:relstr>UPDATE</tl:relstr>
</tl:action>
<tl:action type="replace" >
```

```
<tl:front>2/1</tl:front><tl:back>2/2</tl:back>
<tl:relstr>REVISION</tl:relstr>
</tl:action>
<tl:action type="insert" >
<tl:front>2/2/1</tl:front><tl:back>2/2/2</tl:back>
<tl:relstr>REVISION</tl:relstr>
</tl:action>
```

...

Note:

- It is possible to create a live pages list for non-looseleaf partitions (i.e. if Page management is set to “None” in the **partition properties**). Such partitions will create a live pages list with every page in the current release, and an empty filing list.
- The list of effective pages may not be valid if a composition run generates warnings or errors.

7. Secondary output transformations

The primary output format generated by TopLeaf is paginated content — a set of discrete pages that can be printed or assembled into a PDF document. In addition to these primary output formats, TopLeaf can also generate *secondary outputs*.

Secondary outputs can be created at a very low cost using the stylesheet rules you have set up for paginated output. As such, they provide an easy way to transform your XML content to formats accessible to third-party applications such as word processors or HTML browsers.

TopLeaf provides a number of standard transformations. Additional output formats can be added if required (see the *Transform Manual* in the Programmer Documentation for details).

Note:

Secondary output files may contain text that indicates an evaluation licence was used to create them. This text will not appear if you are using a valid license.

7.1 Characteristics of primary and secondary outputs

Primary and secondary outputs share a common set of stylesheet rules, but the output generated by primary and secondary outputs is not identical. In particular, secondary output formats can contain unexpected variations in presentation when compared with TopLeaf paginated output.

Secondary outputs are intended to provide an alternate rendition of data that can be useful for internal review purposes. Using them as published output is not recommended and not supported.

The following table summarizes the main differences between primary and secondary outputs:

Stylesheet component	Primary Output	Secondary Output
Format type	Paginated	Continuous stream
Looseleaf and change pages	Yes	No
Variable page styles	Yes	No
Typefaces and font styles	Yes	Most, see Section 11.4.12
Paragraph style	Yes	Most paragraph styles honored
Hyperlinks	Yes	Yes
Bookmarks	Yes	Used for formats that include a table of contents
Table style	Yes	Partial, see Section 11.4.12
Box style	Yes	Partial
Images	Yes	Partial, see Section 11.4.12
Headers and Footers	Yes	No
Running Headers	Yes	No

Stylesheet component	Primary Output	Secondary Output
Sidenotes	Yes	No
Footnotes	Yes	Yes, but see Section 11.4.12
Right-to-left text	Yes	No
Multiple labels on a line	Yes	No

Some more specific differences are also listed in the [Known Issues](#) section.

For information about typeface selection in secondary outputs see [Section 3.5.3](#).

7.2 Stylesheet overrides

The [stylesheet format](#) allows you to add styling information that only applies to secondary output formats. Style overrides are contained in the optional `<convert>` element in a mapping. This element is not supported by the [map editor](#) and can only be added by editing the `mappings.tlx` file.

The `convert` element has a single optional attribute called `format`. If this is present, the information only applies when creating output for the format matching the attribute value. If no attribute is present the information will apply to all secondary output formats. If an override for a specific format is found any override without a format specified is ignored.

The child elements of the `convert` element are used to replace the attribute values of elements with a matching name in the mapping. If there is no matching element in the mapping, the override is ignored. Overrides are allowed for the `para`, `font`, `table-style` and `box-style` elements.

For example, consider the following mapping:

```
<mapping path="title">
  <para align="left" before-space="24.0pt"/>
  <font size="16.0pt" bold="yes"/>

  <convert format="html">
    <font size="14.0pt" italic="yes"/>
  </convert>

  <convert>
    <font size="12.0pt" color="blue"/>
    <para align="center"/>
  </convert>

</mapping>
```

When creating `html` format output, the `font` override in the first `<convert>` element will be applied and the `font` override in the second `<convert>` element will be ignored. The `para` override from the second `<convert>` element will be applied. The output will be styled as if the mapping were:

```
<mapping path="title">
  <para align="center" before-space="24.0pt"/>
  <font size="14.0pt" italic="yes" bold="yes"/>
</mapping>
```

For other output formats only the second `<convert>` element overrides will be applied, and the output will be as if the mapping were:

```
<mapping path="title">
```

```
<para align="center" before-space="24.0pt"/>
<font size="12.0pt" color="blue" bold="yes"/>
</mapping>
```

7.2.1 Content extraction

If the `<convert>` element contains a child called `<extract>` the source element which invoked the mapping is processed separately from the conversion stream.

The `<extract>` element may contain the following attributes:

- output** The content is written to a file in the target output directory using the attribute value as the file name. If this attribute is not present the content will be discarded.
- xslt** The content is transformed using an XSLT script before it is written. The file containing the script must be in the same directory as the stylesheet.

This facility can be used for conditional creation of the table of contents. When producing an output that contains its own table of contents it may be preferable to suppress the table of contents generated by the stylesheet. For example:

```
<mapping path="toc">
  <start class="block"/>
  <convert format="epub">
    <extract/>
  </convert>
</mapping>
```

7.3 Enabling secondary outputs

To enable secondary output for a partition you must tick the **Enable secondary transforms** box in the [Partition Properties](#) dialog. This causes the composition engine to create an auxiliary XML file that will be used as the input to the transform program.

The transform program requires that a Java runtime be installed. The location of the runtime must be correctly set in the [Preferences dialog](#).

To start a transformation, choose one of the options on the [File » Transform To](#) menu, or press one of the transform buttons on the [standard toolbar](#). See [Section 10.5.8](#) for more information.

You can also arrange to have the transformed outputs generated automatically. See the [partition properties](#) for details.

Some transformations can require a large amount of memory, particularly when creating metafile graphics to embed in an RTF document. If the transformation fails, try increasing the limit on available memory using the [preferences](#) or the `TLJAVA_ARGS` environment variable.

7.4 Secondary output options

Each output format can have a number of options that control how the output is created. These are controlled by a number of *transform properties*.

The preferred method of setting transform property values is by using [metadata variables](#) in the stylesheet.

The [Transform dialog](#) can be used to set some of the properties, as well as setting default values for a partition.

Note:

The TopLeaf workstation can only be used to set default options for the current partition. It is also possible to set default options at other levels of the hierarchy (for instance, at the publication level). This is considered an advanced feature. Contact Turn-Key support for more information.

7.4.1 HTML transform properties

Property Name	Possible values	Description
title	any string	The HTML page title.
newfile	see below	Determines when a new HTML file is started. Note that when creating a table of contents with maketoc a separate file is created when the TOC starts.
maketoc	true or false	If true , creates a table of contents with links to the corresponding parts of the document. A TOC is only created if there are mappings to assign content to TOC levels (see the Mapping Guide for details).
addnav	true or false	If true , navigation links are added to the bottom of each file to link to the other files. This has no effect if only one output file is created.
xhtml	true or false	If true , the output is valid with respect to XHTML 1.1.
imgcopy	directory name	If present, a subdirectory with the given name is created in the same directory as the output file. All images referenced in the output will be copied into the subdirectory.
imgscale	a number	Controls the image scaling as described below .
fileprefix	any string	This is added to the start of the names of additional files created by the transform. It is not added to the names of the main output file, the image copy directory nor copied images. <div> <p>Note:</p> <p>The use of characters that are not legal in file names may cause the transform to fail or produce invalid output. A short sequence of alphanumeric characters is the recommended value for this property.</p> </div>

Starting a New File

The **newfile** property takes a string value that can determine when a new file starts in a number of ways:

- A single integer value means that an element starts a new file if it is assigned to a TOC level between 1 and the given value, inclusive. For example, the string “2” starts a new file for each level 1 and level 2 TOC entry.
- Two integer values separated by a dash cause a new file to be started for any TOC level within the corresponding inclusive range. For example, “2-3” starts a new file for level 2 and

level 3 TOC entries, but not for level 1.

- The string **page** causes a new file to be started wherever a page break is forced by a mapping. Note that page breaks caused by the normal flow of text cannot be used to trigger a new file.

One of the two numeric specifiers can be combined with the **page** keyword by separating them with a comma. This has the effect of starting a new page if either condition is satisfied. The two parts can occur in any order.

Image Scaling

Images are normally included without any processing, so their size will be determined by the output medium.

By setting the **imgscale** property the actual size will be set based on the size calculated by the composition engine. If the property value is greater than zero the width and height of each image is multiplied by the value to determine the size. A value of one results in the same size as calculated during composition. Note that the specified size may or may not be honored by the output medium.

7.4.2 RTF transform properties

Property Name	Possible values	Description
imgembed	true or false or wmf	If true (the default), images are embedded using PNG or JPEG format if possible, or WMF (Windows Metafile) if not. If false , images are included as links instead of being embedded. If wmf all images are embedded in WMF format. <div>Note: Using the WMF format for bitmap images can result in very large RTF files.</div>
newfile	as for HTML property	Determines when a new RTF file is started. See the corresponding HTML property description for more information.
imgscale	a number	Controls the image scaling. See the corresponding HTML property description for more information.
page	see below	A string containing a number of space or comma-separated values that set the page size and margins.
newpart	section or page or nobreak	When using multiple partitions as input, this controls the action between partitions. If the value is section (the default) a section break is inserted. If page a page break is inserted. If set to nobreak there will be no break between partitions (except for any explicit page break added by the stylesheet).

Page Size and Margins

The **page** property takes a string value containing one or more values separated by spaces and/or commas.

The page size is specified by either a single value containing a paper size or a pair of values giving the width and height. Paper sizes can be an ISO name (e.g. "A4") or the names "Letter" or "Legal". A paper size can also have a trailing "P" for portrait orientation or "L" for landscape.

After the page size are optional values for the page margins, in the order top, bottom, left and right.

All measurements must be numeric and may be followed by a unit of measure string. There must be no space between the number and the unit. The units recognized are “pt” (points), “cm” (centimetres), “mm” (millimetres), “in” (inches) and “pc” (picas). If no unit is present the value is interpreted as points.

Case is ignored in the property value.

The following example sets an A4 portrait page with default margins:

A4P

The following also sets an A4 portrait page with 1 inch top and bottom margins and 30 point left and right margins:

210mm 297mm 1.0in 1.0in 30 30

7.4.3 EPUB transform properties

TopLeaf creates EPUB documents that conform to versions 2.0.1 and 3 of the [EPUB specifications](#).

Property Name	Possible values	Description
title	any text	The title of the publication.
id	any text	A unique identifier for the publication. If this is not specified an identifier will be generated.
creator	see below	This contains one or more names of the publication creator(s). It may also describe the role for each person (such as author or editor).
contributor	as for creator	This is similar to the creator property, but intended for those making a secondary contribution.
publisher	any text	Identifies the publisher.
date	a year or date	The date of publication in ISO 8601 format (YYYY-MM-YY). Only the year component is mandatory.
description	any text	A description of the publication's content.
subject	any text	One or more phrases or keywords relevant to the publication. Use the character (U+007C) to separate them.
rights	any text	A statement about rights, such as a copyright notice.
language	a language code	Identifies a language of the intellectual content of the publication. Must be a language code compliant with RFC 3066 , for example “fr” or “en-US”.

Creator names and roles

If the property contains multiple names, separate them with | (U+007C).

Each name may contain the following optional components:

- A **file-as** string which is used for automated processing, such as sorting.
- A **role** string which describes a type of contribution. These are generally 3-letter codes such as **aut** for “author” or **edt** for “editor”. Consult the EPUB specification for a full list.

The optional components appear after the name. The file-as value is enclosed in braces ({...}) while the role value is enclosed in brackets ([...]). If both are present the file-as value must appear first.

The following example defines an author and editor.

```
<set var="Author" meta="convert.epub.creator"
  string="Joe Bloggs [aut] | Fred Nurke {Nurke, FJ} [edt]"/>
```

If multiple instances of {...} or [...] occur in a name, only the last one has a special meaning. You can add an empty string at the end to force the name to include the previous occurrences. For example, the following sets the name to “Jeanne d’Arc [Joan of Arc]” without defining a role:

```
<set var="Author" meta="convert.epub.creator"
  string="Jeanne d'Arc [Joan of Arc] []"/>
```

7.4.4 tekReader transform properties

The [tekReader](#) platform created by [eGloo technologies](#) allows you to create electronic publications which adapt automatically to any output device.

In order to display the tekReader publications created by TopLeaf you will need to have a server account. Contact [Turn-Key Systems](#) for more information.

Note:

Unlike other output formats, a table of contents is mandatory for tekReader publications. Your stylesheet must have mappings that assign values to the appropriate [TOC levels](#).

Property Name	Possible values	Description
title	any text	The title of the publication.
url	a valid URL	The URL to which the publication will be uploaded. See below for more information.
pubid	an integer	A number identifying the publication.
datakey	a string	A string identifying the publication.
upload	yes or no	Controls whether to upload to a server.
newfile	as for HTML property	Determines when a new tekReader <i>part</i> is started. See the corresponding HTML property description for more information.
include.N	a file path	Each instance contains the path to a file to be included in the publication. There must be a value with N set to 1. For additional values increase N by one. See below for more information.
include.N.path	a file name or relative path	Sets the destination path for an included file. See below for more information.
book	a javascript object	Specifies the content written to the “book.json” file. See below for more information.
thumbnails	yes or no	If yes (the default) thumbnail versions of large images are created.
index.N.title	any text	Sets the title for an index. The value of N must be 1-9 or xref . See below for more information.

Property Name	Possible values	Description
index.N.group	true or false	If true an index level is created when the first letter of the item changes in index N . See below for more information.

Uploading the publication

The default action is to attempt to upload the data to a server. A warning will be generated if the upload is not successful. Set the **upload** property to **no** to disable this.

All of the **url**, **pubid** and **datakey** properties are required for a successful upload. Contact Turn-Key Systems for information about the appropriate values to use.

Including additional files

A file can be included in the publication as follows:

- Set one of the **include.N** properties to the absolute path of the file.
- Use the **book** property to create publication meta-data that includes the file name.

The file must exist when the publication is created. By default it is stored at the top level of the publication using the same file name. If the **include.N.path** property is set (using the same value of **N**) its value is used as the destination path. This must be either a simple file name or a relative path (for example, "resources/logo.png").

A common use for this is to include a PDF rendition of the publication that is displayed when the user clicks the "print" button. The following example demonstrates this:

```
<set var="TekrPdf" meta="convert.tekr.include.1"
string="C:\pub\sample.pdf"/>
<set var="TekrBook" meta="convert.tekr.book">&#x7b;
  "pdf" : "sample.pdf"
}</set>
```

Note the use of a character reference to encode the "{" character, since this is a reserved character in custom content.

Generating indexes

Indexes can be generated from data produced by mappings that set the Assign to index level or XREF field on the [Content tab](#).

To create an index in the publication you must set an appropriate title. The following sets a title for items captured using level 5:

```
<set var="TekrIndex" meta="convert.tekr.index.5.title"
string="catchwords"/>
```

Document identifiers

The converter will generate unique identifiers for each element in the output. A consequence of this is that each conversion run creates new identifier values.

The following command can be used to set the identifier prefix to a known value for all content from this point on:

```
<tekr-info name="docid" value="PREFIX"/>
```

8. Looseleaf publishing and version control

8.1 Basic concepts

8.1.1 What is looseleaf publishing

Looseleaf publishing minimizes the number of replacement pages required to update one release of a publication to the next. Instead of re-issuing an entire publication (which could be many printed volumes), an **update pack** contains replacements for only those pages which have been recently added or updated. In a typical publication the size of an update pack is significantly smaller than that of a complete reprint, resulting in substantial reductions in printing and distribution costs.

To help the end-user update a *printed* publication from one release to the next, a set of **filing instructions** is usually included. These tell the user which current pages should be removed, and where the update pages should be inserted. More correctly we should talk of **leaves** (sheets of paper) rather than pages, as each leaf is normally printed on both sides and so contains two pages.

To facilitate the updating process, the printed publication is normally in the form of one or more ring binders which can be opened at any point to allow the insertion or removal of individual leaves. Hence the name **looseleaf**.

Looseleaf methods also have a place in the world of electronic publishing where corporations and government regulatory authorities are required by law to ensure that their publications identify the currency of each page. This can be done by including a **release specific label** on each page and by providing a **list of effective pages**.

8.1.2 Looseleaf terminology

The content of a looseleaf publication consists of a number of **leaves**. A leaf is normally printed on both sides, with the odd numbered page on the front and the even on the back (e.g. pages 65–66 would form a single leaf), though **single sided looseleaf** is also possible. **Intentionally blank** pages are included where necessary to retain the leaf structure. Each partition can contain a maximum of 32,000 pages.

Each publication starts off as an **initial release**, which contains all the material. Then at intervals an **update release** is issued. This is normally in the form of an **update pack**, which consists of a set of updated leaves, usually with the **release number** printed on each page, plus **filing instructions** that explain when pages are to be removed or replaced, and where new pages should be inserted. There may also be a **live pages list**, which shows when each page was last released.

If a new customer wants to purchase a complete, up to date, printed looseleaf publication, it is also possible to produce a **full release**, which contains the entire publication identical to what existing customers have at the current release.

8.1.3 Looseleaf methods

TopLeaf supports two forms of looseleaf:

- **full looseleaf**, which is designed to minimize the size of each update pack;
- **change pages** looseleaf, which is designed to minimize the size of the whole updated publication.

Which method you choose is governed by a number of factors.

The **full looseleaf** method:

- Produces smaller update packs for print publications.
- Supports two page or **single page** leaves. A two page leaf consists of a front and a back page. Both pages are included in the numbering sequence. In single page looseleaf, each leaf consists of a single page which always has an unnumbered back in the printed version.

- Uses a sequential page numbering scheme. If the replacement material for an existing leaf cannot be rendered on that leaf, the excess material is automatically set on additional **point pages**.
- Supports **gapping** and link lines to allow for growth without point pages.
- Declares all content as a single flattened document file — with the exception of external images, no content may be referenced from an external file. This is because the content of the partition document is allocated to one or more leaves, and the document leaf boundaries correspond to a portion of that file.
- Creates updates based primarily on changes to the *document content*. Each time the content is modified TopLeaf identifies all leaves where the content has changed. Leaves that do not contain changed content can also be **manually**, **conditionally**, or **automatically** included in a release.
- Allows editorial intervention and checking. For example, if a change in one part of the document causes a change to a cross reference in another location, then you may manually include those other leaves in the release. When non-adjacent leaves within a section of the publication change frequently, you may **consolidate those changes** to avoid the creation of an unwieldy collection of point pages that run to several levels.
- Provides limited support for on-the-fly transformations of the input document stream.
- Places some **restrictions** on data and mappings.

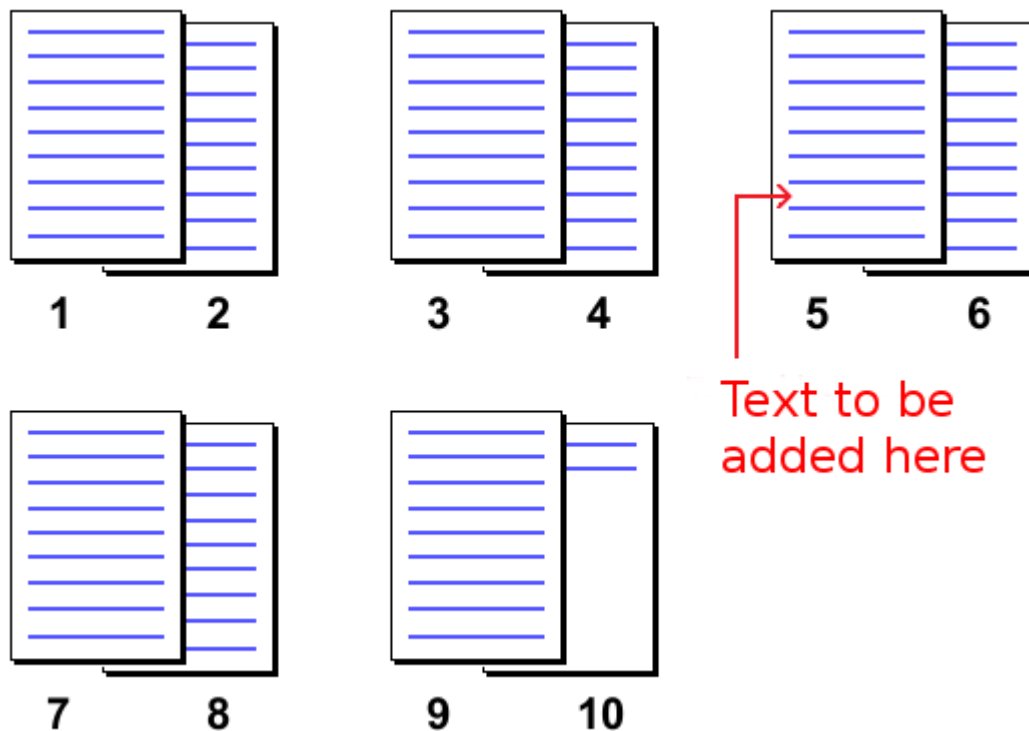
whereas the ***change pages*** method:

- Produces larger update packs, since a change early in a section may require the whole remainder of the section to be included in the release. However the size of the *whole* updated publication is optimized.
- Uses a section based page numbering scheme. Point pages and link lines (for example, **Your next page is ...**) are not required.
- Assigns a unique **identifier** to each page and then **identifies changes** within the rendered pages to determine the set of pages in a release.
- Issues leaves in the update pack.
- Places no restrictions on data or mappings.
- Requires minimal editorial intervention and checking and is ideal for full automation.

8.1.4 Method comparison

In the following diagrams each pair of pages is printed on a single leaf, with the odd-numbered page on the front and the following even-numbered page on the back. Text lines added during the update are shown in red, while leaves needing to be updated are highlighted in yellow.

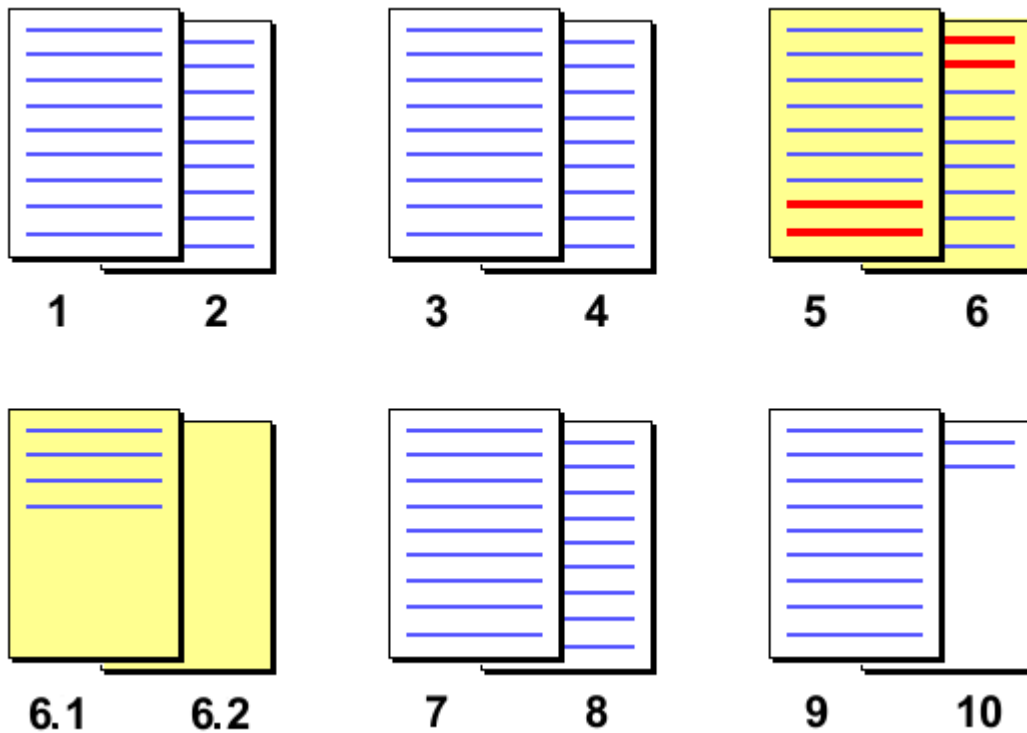
It is useful to compare how the two methods handle the addition of new material. For example, assume you are adding a paragraph of text to the following pages:



Full looseleaf

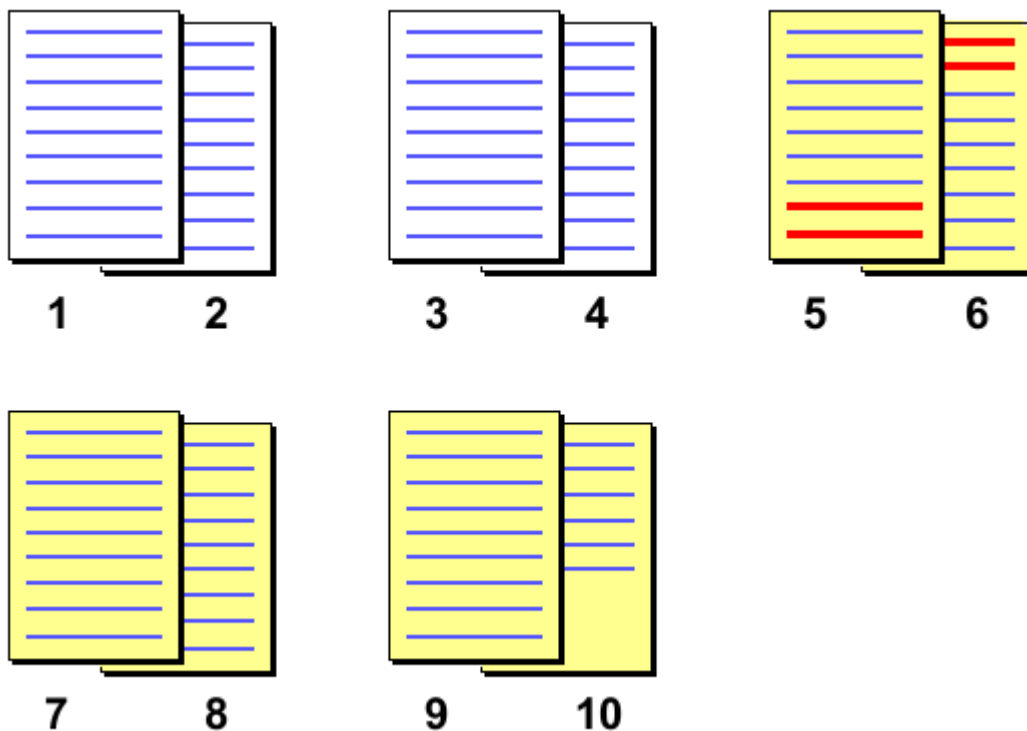
If you are using the full looseleaf method, a new leaf will be created for the overflow from page 6 caused by the additional text. In order to make it fit in the numbering scheme, the **point pages 6.1** and **6.2** are generated. The remaining leaves (7–8 and 9–10) were not altered and so do not form

part of the update. This results in a smaller (4 page) update, but a larger (12 page) total document size.



Change pages

Using the change pages method, the new text causes the following material to re-flow until a suitable gap (for example, a section end) is encountered. This results in a larger update pack (6 page) than with the full looseleaf model, but the overall document size remains at 10 pages and the required filing is easier to perform.



8.1.5 Marking the extent of changed content

While Topleaf is capable of identifying when the content of a leaf or page has **changed**, this does not mean that Topleaf automatically generates **change bars**, **deletion markers**, or shaded **boxed regions**, effects often used to visually identify the extent of new or deleted content within a specific release.

These effects will only be rendered by TopLeaf if:

- your content carries suitable markup to identify the extent of changed or deleted content;
- that markup is **mapped** to the required effect using one or more Topleaf style sheet rules.

8.2 The looseleaf production cycle

All TopLeaf looseleaf partitions follow the production cycle described below. The other sections of this chapter deal specifically with either change pages or full looseleaf page management.

8.2.1 Release management

A looseleaf partition is produced as a set of **releases (updates)**. The initial release, or **mainwork**, contains a set of output pages for the entire document. Subsequent releases can be produced in the form of **update packs** that contain those pages modified in the release.

Each release is identified by a unique **release label**. This might be a number (for example, **Release 15**), a date (**June 2013**) or any other identifying string (**Act 07/37 amendments**). This label normally appears in a header or footer, to inform the reader when the material was last updated. This visible release information is also useful in electronic documents because it indicates the currency of pages as the partition changes over time.

A release can be in one of two **phases**:

- an **initial** or **update** phase, where the source material can be altered, and the content composed;
- a **published** phase where the source material is locked for archiving and to form the starting point for the next release.

8.2.2 Setting up a looseleaf partition

The first step in setting up a looseleaf partition is to assign the **page management** model as either full looseleaf or change pages. Typesetting the partition now creates a **mainwork**.

8.2.3 Publishing the initial release

An initial release is ready to be **published** when changes to the source material and style sheet rules have been finalized and the paged output verified by the user. By default, TopLeaf assumes that the page output is not acceptable unless the partition content can be rendered without generating composition errors. When using the full looseleaf page management model, TopLeaf automatically divides the associated source material into **leaves** when the partition is published.

8.2.4 The update cycle

Publishing the mainwork establishes a baseline from which subsequent changes to published leaves or pages can be identified. The following cycle is repeated indefinitely as the partition advances through a succession of releases:

- Create the **Next Update**.
- **Label** the release (for example, **July 2013**).
- Apply any corrections and alterations to the source content.
- **Compose** the release and proof the output pages.
- In a full looseleaf publication, you may want to **consolidate the set of changed leaves** to minimise the number of leaves issued in the release.
- **Publish** the release. A full looseleaf release can only be published if it can be composed without warnings and errors.
- For electronic publications you can now create a PDF for the entire publication and a list of effective pages (live pages list).
- For printed publications you can create an **update pack** consisting of:
 - all new or modified leaves;
 - a set of filing instructions detailing which pages should be removed and where the new material should be inserted;
 - an optional list of effective pages.

After each cycle is complete, the system is ready for the creation of the next release.

The cycle continues between update and publish throughout the life of the document. When each new update is created, TopLeaf can automatically remove releases that are no longer required. The number of releases you want to keep is declared on the [Exports](#) tab of the **Partition Properties** dialog.

8.2.5 Changing the stylesheet

Care must be taken when applying stylesheet changes to a looseleaf publication because they can have a significant effect on every page of a document.

The impact of a style change depends on both the type of change and the selected looseleaf options. Changes can be of three basic types:

- *Adding mappings for new elements, or new element/attribute combinations* is generally safe. This is because the new mappings have never been called from the existing material, and so they will only affect new or updated content.
- *Changing mappings which are called infrequently* is safe if done with care. In a change pages publication, any pages affected by the change (to the end of the section) will need to be re-issued. In full looseleaf publications where output checking is not enabled, changes to mappings will only affect pages associated with leaves that contain modified content. If you want the changes to the mappings to affect any other leaves in the update then these leaves must be **manually included**.
- *Changing mappings which have global effect* (e.g. changing font size or page layout) should generally be avoided. Such changes will often result in a complete re-issue of change pages jobs and also full looseleaf jobs with output checking enabled. In full looseleaf publications where output checking is not enabled, the modified styles will not by themselves force pages to be re-issued. But in subsequent releases, changes to the source material will cause all modified leaves to be re-issued in the new format. This will result in mixed-format releases, with the percentage of new format leaves increasing over time. Whether this is acceptable will depend on the requirements of the publication compared with the cost of issuing a full reprint.

8.3 Change pages publishing

This section explains how to create, configure and manage change pages publications in TopLeaf. For full looseleaf publishing, see [Section 8.4](#).

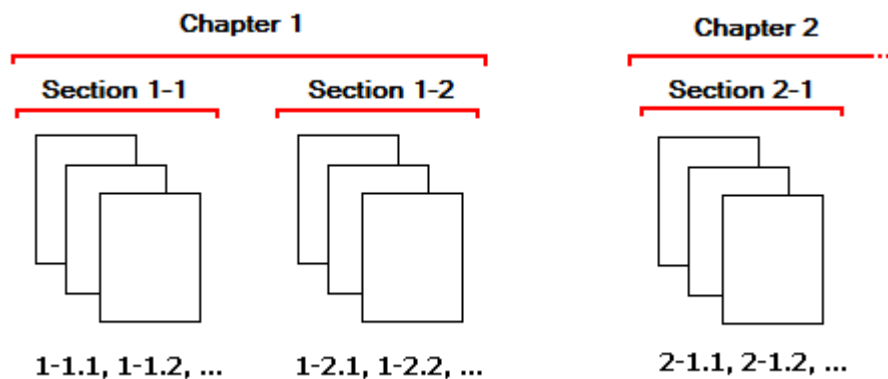
8.3.1 How change pages publishing works

Change pages publishing works best when processing technical manuals and documentation which are composed of a number of small parts, each of which starts on a new page. Such manuals typically use a hierarchical numbering scheme that lends itself to the generation of a unique identifier for each page. The change pages looseleaf model assigns a unique **identifier** to each page, so that the corresponding page in the previous release can be located for comparison (differencing).

All page identifiers must:

- be defined in the custom content of a header or footer
- consist only of characters within the **US-ASCII** character set
- contain a maximum of 32 characters

For example, consider a document consisting of a number of chapters, each containing one or more sections. Each section starts a new right-hand page. This diagram shows how the pages are organized and labeled:



In the TopLeaf mappings you could maintain three counters called `{ChapterNum}`, `{SectionNum}` and `{PageNum}`. The mapping for a chapter increments the **ChapterNum** counter and resets the **SectionNum** counter to zero. The mapping for a section increments **SectionNum** and resets **PageNum**. In the **custom content** for the footer you generate the page identifier and display the page number (folio) as follows:

```
<set var="PageNum" value="{PageNum}+1"/>
<page-properties id="{ChapterNum}-{SectionNum}.{PageNum}"/>
Page {ChapterNum}-{SectionNum}.{PageNum}
```

To generate unique page identifiers, you must call the `<page-properties/>` command in the custom content for a header or footer. It is not necessary to assign an identifier to every page, but pages with no identifier will *always* be included in the current **release**. You can use this technique to ensure that a table of contents, title page, and any other preliminary pages are always printed.

The page identifier is used to label the page in the **navigation pane**. Pages in the page list that have not been assigned a unique page identifier are listed using the underlying page sequence number.

Note:

It is an error to assign the same identifier to more than one page. If this occurs, all pages will be listed using a page sequence number. The **composition log** file includes a list of all duplicate page identifiers.

You cannot use the **<folio/>** command to assign a page identifier as this command always returns the page sequence number.

8.3.2 Page groups

A page group allows you to create a set of pages which are all included in the release when any of them have changed since the last release. To create a page group, set the **group** value of the **<page-properties/>** command.

For example, say your document has a Table of Contents which you want included in its entirety if it has changed, and not included if it is unchanged. For each page in the Table of Contents, set the **group** value to a particular string, such as "TOC". Note that while pages in a group will usually be contiguous, there is no requirement that they must be.

All page groups must:

- be defined in the custom content of a header or footer
- consist only of characters within the **US-ASCII** character set
- contain a maximum of 32 characters

8.3.3 Setting up change pages publishing

To enable change pages publishing, open the **Partition Properties dialog** and set the **Page management** control on the **Looseleaf** tab to **Change Pages**.

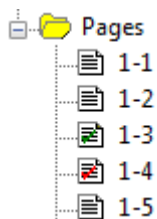
You must define the area of the page that will be checked to see if changes have occurred. Often this will not be the whole page, but will for example, exclude the header and footer blocks, because they may contain material that is specific to the update, such as a release number or date. Excluding material that changes with each update is important in order to prevent false change indications. To define which part of the page is used for comparison, set the **difference area** in the Layout Editor.

8.3.4 Life cycle of a change pages partition

Once the output is correct, the partition can be printed, and/or created electronically, and then distributed. At this point the partition is **published**.

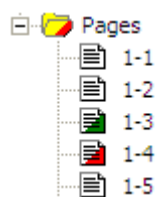
While it is not possible to edit material once a release has been published, it is possible to **cancel and delete** the current release and revert to the previous release.

Before making any changes to the data, use the **Next Update** command to create a new release. At this point the partition is in the *update* phase and the partition content may be altered and retypeset. If you have not selected Only check for output changes when publishing in the **partition properties** the Pages display will show changed pages with a tick:



A green tick indicates a change caused by the content of the page, while a red tick indicates a **derived change**.

When the release is ready to distribute, use the **Publish** command. The Pages display changes to:



where the color of the corners has the same meaning as above. At this point you can print or create a PDF of the changed pages, produce a list of **filing instructions** and a list of effective pages.

While TopLeaf always assigns the next sequential number when a new release is created, you can use the **Label this Release** command to assign a specific release label (for example, **August 2013**).

8.3.5 Determining which pages have changed

The following method is used to determine if a page is included in the list of changed pages:

- the **page identifier** for the page is determined. If the page has no page identifier it is included.
- the page in the previous release with the same page identifier is found. If there is no such page in the previous release, the page is included;
- if the corresponding page in the previous release exists, but is on a different side of the leaf, the page is included; otherwise
- the two pages are **compared**. If a change is identified within the **difference area**, the page is included.

In addition, the page can be included because of a *derived change*:

- if the page is on the same leaf as a changed page (for example, if the front of the leaf is unchanged, but the back is different — the front must also be issued);
- if the page is in the same **group** as a changed page.

8.3.6 Page comparison

Two pages are considered equal when they contain the same content within the page layout **diffrencing area**, and that content is at the same vertical and horizontal position on both pages.

When comparing two pages, TopLeaf looks at sequences of text, rules and graphics within the difference area.

Graphics are considered to be equal if the base filename (that is, the name excluding the folder path) of each graphic is identical. The content of the graphic files is not compared.

Color is not considered when comparing text and rules.

Hyperlink launch and target identifiers are ignored during comparison.

Excluding specific content

Any rendered content can be excluded from the page comparison:

- by setting the suppression level of content using the **<content-properties/>** command;
- by setting the suppression level of margin rules and deletion markers using the **<marginrule-properties/>** command;
- by setting the level above which the content will be excluded either by using the **<content-properties/>** command or by setting the Ignore output changes above content level partition property.

8.4 Full looseleaf publishing

8.4.1 How full looseleaf publishing works

Full looseleaf publishing works by allocating the document content to one or more document leaves. When the document is modified, TopLeaf compares the content of each leaf with the content of the same leaf in the previous release. Any leaf containing **changed content** is marked for inclusion in the release. It is a requirement of full looseleaf publishing that all partition document content is contained within a single flattened document file. With the exception of external images, no content can be referenced from an external file.

8.4.2 Numbering schemes

You can choose to structure the leaves using a partition based numbering scheme or a section based numbering scheme. In a partition based numbering scheme the leaves are organised into one or more leaf **groups**. In a section based numbering scheme the leaves are organised into one or more leaf **sections**. The selected numbering scheme applies to the *entire* partition. Leaf groups cannot contain leaf sections, and leaf sections cannot contain leaf groups.

Partition based numbering

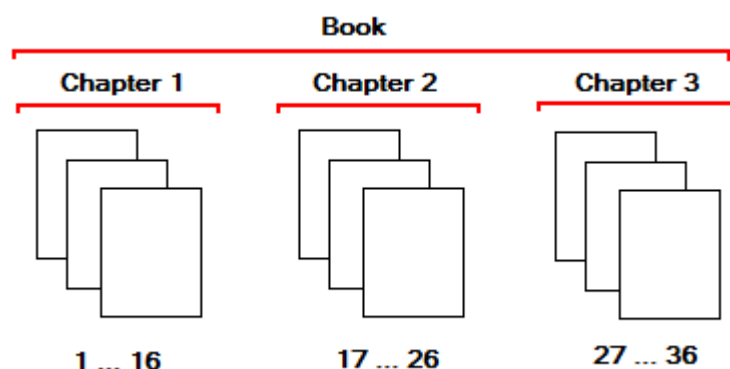
In a partition based numbering scheme, the folio numbering begins at a user defined start page, and the pages are numbered sequentially. The page folio is a numeric identifier consisting of a primary folio index and up to four additional point page levels.

The folio can be rendered as a numeric, alpha or roman numeral label that conforms to the following constraints:

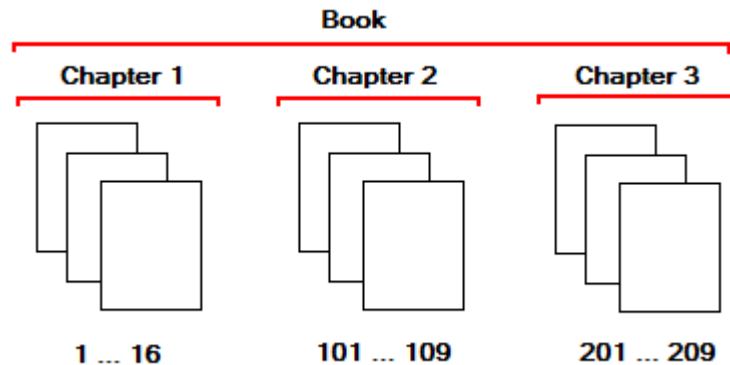
- The primary folio index is an integer value within the range 1 to 32,000;
- The point page separator character is a single character. It cannot be declared as an entity;
- The value for each numeric point page component is an integer value in the range 0 to 999.

Leaves can be organised into one or more leaf groups. Each leaf group can be optionally separated from the following leaf group by a gap in the folio numbering sequence. This technique is known as gapping. Gapping helps to minimize the total number of point pages by reserving a folio range into which a leaf group may expand if necessary.

Leaf groups are usually associated with a major document structural unit, such as a chapter, a table of contents, or an index. For example, consider a document consisting of a number of chapters, with each chapter beginning on a right-hand page and numbered with consecutive folios. There is no room for expansion:



When a leaf gap of 100 is applied by starting a new leaf group on the mapping for the `<chapter>` tag, the folio numbering sequence will look like this:



There is now room for expansion at the end of each chapter.

Leaf groups and leaf gaps can only be declared in a mainwork. Once established, the number of leaf groups and the gap size remains unchanged. For this reason, if you decide to organise your content using leaf groups, first identify the parts of your content that can be associated with a leaf group, and estimate an appropriate gapping size. The default leaf gapping is 100 pages. You can use the `<leaf-settings>` command to change the default gap size.

Section based numbering

In a section based numbering scheme, the folio numbering for each leaf section begins at 1, and each leaf folio is numerically greater than the previous leaf folio in the same section. A document can consist of any number of leaf sections, and sections can be created, inserted or removed in any release.

Each leaf section is associated with a unique section prefix that identifies all pages within that section. All leaf sections starts on a recto page and are numbered from 1. Point pages may be created between existing leaves within a section, but changes at the end of the section will always result in the creation of additional leaves.

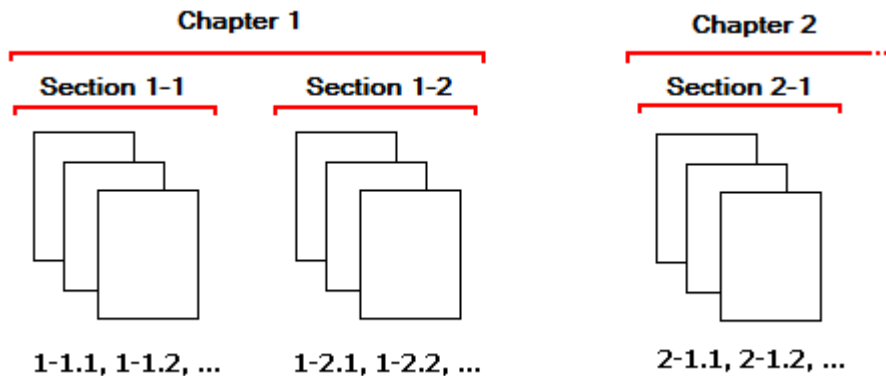
Page folios consist of two components — the section prefix and a sequence number. The section prefix may consist only of characters within the US-ASCII character set and contain a maximum of 32 characters. The sequence number consists of a primary index and up to four additional point page levels and can be rendered as a numeric, alpha or roman numeral.

The sequence number can be rendered as a numeric, alpha or roman numeral label that conforms to the following constraints:

- The folio index is an integer value within the range 1 to 32,000;
- The point page separator character is a single character. It cannot be declared as an entity;
- The value for each numeric point page component is an integer value in the range 0 to 999.

Leaf sections are often associated with a major document structural unit, such as a chapter, section, table of contents, or an index. For example, consider a document consisting of a number of

chapters, with each chapter containing one or more sections. Each section starts a new right-hand page. This diagram shows how the leaves are organized and labelled:



Now suppose that each `<chapter>` tag declares an attribute that identifies the chapter number, and each `<section>` tag declares an attribute that identifies the section within that chapter. In the TopLeaf mappings you can capture the chapter identifier as `{ChapterID}`, and the section identifier as `{SectionNum}`.

To create or start a leaf section, declare the section prefix by including a `<leaf-properties/>` command in the **custom content** of a mapping triggered at the beginning of the section:

```
<leaf-properties section-prefix="{ChapterID}-{SectionNum}." />
```

A section remains in force until the end of the document or until a new section prefix is declared. The page folio can be referenced by including the `<folio/>` command within a page header or footer. In some publication styles it may be necessary to suppress either the section prefix or page sequence number. The following example shows how the `<folio/>` command can be used to reference a page folio without the section prefix:

```
<folio prefix="no" />
```

8.4.3 Setting up full looseleaf publishing

To enable full looseleaf publishing, open the **Partition Properties dialog** and set the **Page management** control on the **Looseleaf** tab to **Looseleaf**. You must then decide how you want TopLeaf to manage the partition content. Some of the options to consider are:

- whether to use single or double sided looseleaf processing;
- The page folio format;
- whether leaf, page and line boundary markers are hidden or always visible;
- whether to minimise the number of leaves issued in a release by **consolidating the set of changed leaves**;
- whether to reduce the size of the **update pack** by enabling **output page comparison**.

8.4.4 The page folio format

When using a partition based numbering scheme, the **page folio format** determines the general format of the primary folio index. If you are using a section based numbering scheme, the page folio format determines general format of the page folio sequence number. The page folio format is declared when setting up a partition mainwork and cannot be changed in any subsequent update. You can use the `<leaf-settings/>` to set the point page level separator character.

8.4.5 Point pages

If the replacement material for an existing leaf cannot be rendered on that leaf, the excess material is automatically set on additional **point pages**. With the exception of the **999(ab) page folio**

format, which permits a single point page level, you can create leaves that specify a primary folio index and up to 4 additional point page levels.

8.4.6 Boundary markers

Each time a release is published, TopLeaf automatically re-allocates the partition content to a set of leaves. When you retrieve the content of an **update release** from a partition, TopLeaf assembles the content as a single document for processing by your document authoring tool or for archival within your CMS.

A **boundary marker** defines the position of a published leaf, page or line break within a document.

You can optionally **view the published boundaries** when editing the partition content or **include the published boundaries** when exporting that content to an external document file. If you decide to show boundaries, Topleaf uses processing instructions to mark the position of these boundaries within that content. The following table lists the processing instructions that TopLeaf inserts within a document in order to identify the position of leaf, page, and line boundaries:

Type	PI name	Example
Leaf	<?TL ...?>	<?TL partition="looseleaf/BOM" folio="5" hyphen="1" ?>
Page	<?TLeop ... ?>	<?TLeop partition="looseleaf/BOM" relnum="0" relstr="Original Document" folio="6" ?>
Line	<?TLeol ... ?>	<?TLeol partition="looseleaf/BOM" relnum="0" relstr="Original Document" folio="6" lineno="12" ?>

Each processing instruction marks the position of the associated boundary type within the document content. Page and line boundary markers identify the position of a page or line break for the release in which the containing leaf was last changed or included. A boundary marker describes characteristics of the boundary using one or more of the following attributes:

Attribute	Type	Meaning
partition	string	The partition name
relnum	number	The TopLeaf release number in which the leaf was last changed or included
relstr	string	A release label that identifies the release in which the leaf was last changed or included
folio	string	Identifies the leaf or page to which the boundary applies, or in the case of a line boundary, in which the line occurs.
hyphen	number	If defined, and equal to 1, indicates that the leaf or page boundary occurs within a hyphenated word.
wrdbrk	number	A non-zero offset specifying a word break point at which the boundary occurs. For example, in the case of a leaf boundary marker, the declaration wrdbrk="8" indicates that the leaf boundary is positioned eight characters from the start of the current word.

The **TL**, **TLeop** and **TLeol** processing instruction names are reserved for use by TopLeaf. When editing or replacing the content of an update release, you *must not* add, remove or modify the attributes of any processing instruction declared with these names.

8.4.7 Processing published leaf boundaries

After the initial release is published, TopLeaf manages the partition content as a set of document leaves. When an unchanged looseleaf document is typeset, each published leaf boundary identifies a leaf break point that prevents the allocation of additional content to the leaf being processed. If a looseleaf document contains leaves that have been changed or manually included, TopLeaf ignores all published leaf boundaries within runs of adjacent changed or included leaves, typesetting the content of each leaf run as a single unit. The published boundary at the end of the run identifies a break point that prevents the allocation of additional content to the leaf run being processed.

When scanned document content spans a published leaf boundary, the leaf inclusion status influences how the content of the leaves is processed. If neither of the leaves sharing the boundary have been changed or included then the position of the boundary within the scanned content will be honored. An exception to this rule may occur if the rendered scanned content of a changed or included leaf overflows into the following leaf — for example, where a leaf boundary follows a hyphenated word or word break character, or is positioned within a split table row.

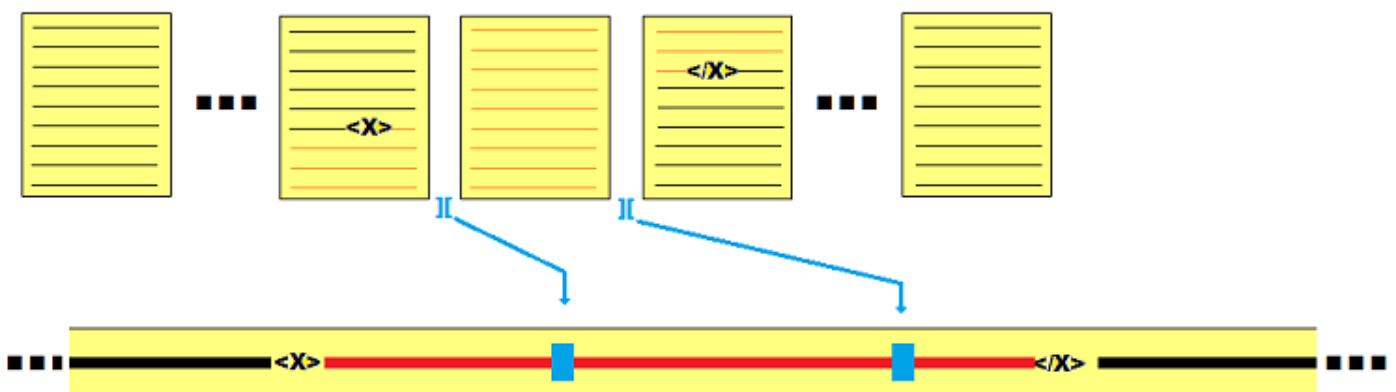
The composition engine may be required to automatically include a leaf if the adjacent leaf sharing a scanned leaf boundary is changed or included. This action may result in the inclusion of additional leaves in the release if you have not enabled **output page comparison**.

However, TopLeaf will not honor the position of an existing scanned leaf boundary that is rendered:

- after being **transformed**;
- solely within the context of a **custom marker** or a **system marker**;
- within a **custom table**;
- using a **copy** of the scanned content;
- using the **{content}** system variable.

8.4.8 Determining the position of leaf boundaries

The TopLeaf composition engine processes a full looseleaf XML document content as a primary input stream sourced from a series of leaf files. As each character is read, a *character count* associates the position of each character relative to the beginning of the document input stream with a page position within the rendered output.



Leaf, page or line boundaries are assigned when a partition is **published**. All boundaries can only be positioned within content that has been sourced from the primary document input stream and rendered within a **data column**. TopLeaf cannot calculate the position of any leaf, page or line boundary that is located within:

- content included from an external file;
- content generated by a **user defined customisation**;
- a **custom table**;

- a table row that **splits** across a page boundary;
- a **note**, **running head**, **fixed block**, or **float**.

The position of page and line boundaries is immediately invalidated by *any* change to the document content. Leaf boundaries however, remain fixed until the release is published.

8.4.9 Content scanning

Style sheet mapping rules allow you to **scan** and reuse the content of an element. The scanned content can be rendered immediately, or assigned to **notes**, **running heads**, **fixed blocks**, and **floats**. You can also apply a user **customisation** to reassign or **transform** the scanned content.

While scanning is permitted within a full looseleaf partition, TopLeaf can only position leaf, page or line boundaries within scanned content that is:

- sourced entirely from the flattened partition document file;
- rendered immediately, or if the content is suppressed, by referencing the `<content/>` command;
- rendered *before* any other content generated by a user defined **customisation**.


TopLeaf cannot calculate the position of leaf, page or line boundaries located within scanned content that is rendered:


- after being **transformed**;
- after being re-scanned and rendered by a **custom marker** or a **system marker**;
- from within a **custom table**;
- within content extracted from an XML fragment using `<xmlproc/>`;
- as a **note**, **running head**, or **float**
- using a **copy** of the scanned content;
- using the `{content}` system variable.




When any of these events occur, the boundary will be positioned *after* the element containing the scanned content.


Scanned document content that is suppressed at the end of a paragraph will not be associated with that paragraph unless you force a **content break** or generate additional custom content — for example, by outputting a zero width space (U+200B) — before the paragraph ends.

Examples

The following table lists examples of mapping rules that process scanned content, together with a possible implementation. A  in the final column indicates whether or not TopLeaf can position leaf, page or line boundaries within the scanned content.









Mapping rule requirement	Description	Boundaries can be positioned
Scan the content of a tag. Assign the content of a tag to a running head and render the original scanned content.	The requirement is implemented by scanning the tag content and assigning a running head directly from the mapping <code>Content</code> tab. The scanned content is rendered automatically.	

Mapping rule requirement	Description	Boundaries can be positioned
Scan the content of a tag. If the tag identifies a telltale, then assign the tag content to a data telltale and render the original scanned content.	<p>The requirement is implemented using the following user customisation:</p> <pre><if var="@id" target="telltale" > <TellTale><content/></TellTale> </if> <content/></pre> <p>The mapping scans and suppresses the tag content. If the element is a telltale, the tag content is passed to a %Telltale custom marker mapping that assigns the data telltale without rendering any additional content.</p> <p>The scanned content is rendered using the <code><content/></code> command.</p>	
Scan and suppress the content of an inline tag. The tag is positioned immediately before the end of a paragraph. Assign the scanned content to a sidenote.	<p>The requirement is implemented by rendering a zero width space (U+200B) within the end tag user customisation of the mapping that assigns the sidenote:</p> <pre>&#8203;</pre>	
Scan the content of a tag. If the tag identifies a footnote, then assign the tag content to a data telltale and render the text of the scanned content.	<p>The requirement is implemented using the following user customisation:</p> <pre><if var="@id" target="note" > <Note><content/></Note> </if> {content}</pre> <p>The mapping scans and suppresses the tag content. If the element is a note, the tag content is passed to a %Note custom marker mapping that assigns a page footnote without rendering any additional content</p> <p>The text of the scanned content is rendered using the <code>{content}</code> system variable. Boundaries cannot be positioned within the scanned content because the value of <code>{content}</code> is a transform version of the scanned content — the tag structure has been stripped.</p>	

Mapping rule requirement	Description	Boundaries can be positioned
Scan the content of a tag. Output additional content before and after the scanned content.	<p>The requirement is implemented using the following user customisation:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">[<I>Warning:</I> <content/>]</p> <p>The mapping scans and suppresses the tag content. It then formats and renders additional text before rendering the scanned content. Boundaries cannot be positioned within the scanned content because additional content has been inserted by the user customisation.</p>	




8.4.10 The leaf status

The partition leaf list reflects the leaf group structure and the leaf status within the published leaf set. In an update phase, the leaf list displays changes in the status of each leaf. A change in the status of a leaf means that one of the following events has occurred: the leaf content has been altered, the leaf was manually included, or the leaf was automatically included in the release. The status of individual leaves can be inspected from the TopLeaf workstation [leaf list](#). In an update phase, the icons associated with each leaf in the leaf list represent one, or a combination of the following leaf properties:

Icon	Meaning
	The leaf marks the start of a leaf group or leaf section .
	The content of the leaf is neither changed or marked for inclusion in the current release.
	The content of the leaf has been modified.
	The output pages associated with the leaf have changed.
	The leaf has been manually included in the release.
	The leaf has been manually included in the release. It will be included even if the associated output pages remain unchanged.
	The leaf has been conditionally or automatically included in the release by the composition engine.
	The leaf belongs to a leaf group that has been renumbered.

When the partition is published, TopLeaf reallocates the document content to a new set of leaves. This reallocation is a consequence of changes to leaf content, or manual, conditional, or automatic leaf inclusions. Note that if you have enabled [output page comparison](#), a change to the status of a leaf in an update phase does not necessarily mean the leaf will be regarded as changed when the phase is published.

In a published phase, the [leaf list](#) displays the published leaf set and specifically, which leaves have been replaced or added. The icons associated with each leaf represent the following:

Icon	Meaning
	The leaf marks the start of a leaf group or leaf section .
	The leaf content and associated output pages are unchanged.
	The leaf was changed or added to the partition leaf set.

The leaf status for an updated or published leaf can be inspected by selecting an individual leaf and right clicking the leaf icon to open the **leaf properties** dialog.

8.4.11 Changed and deleted content

After editing or replacing the content of a release, TopLeaf identifies all leaves in which the content has been altered. When the content of a leaf is **different** to the content of the same leaf in the previous release then the leaf will be included in the release.

In the case when all of the content of a leaf is deleted, then the leaf boundaries remain in place and the leaf still exists even though it is empty. If you need to remove empty leaves then you can do this by consolidating the set of changed leaves.

8.4.12 Manual leaf inclusion

Manual leaf inclusion can be used to force the composition engine to compose a run of changed or included leaves as a single unit. This is a useful technique if you want to **optimise** the impact of input changes on the leaf numbering sequence. You can manually include leaf groups, leaf sections, or individual leaves within a release.

TopLeaf provides two methods for the manual inclusion of leaves. A *soft leaf inclusion* occurs when you want TopLeaf to include an unchanged leaf in an update, even if the **content** of that leaf is unchanged. A *hard leaf inclusion* occurs when you want TopLeaf to include an unchanged leaf in an update, even if the rendered **visual appearance** of that leaf is unchanged.

You must use the TopLeaf workstation to **manually include** a leaf in a release.

8.4.13 Conditional leaf inclusion

Style sheet mapping rules applied by the composition engine can *conditionally* include leaf groups or leaf sections. You can set the **include** attribute in the `<leaf-properties/>` command to mark all leaf groups or sections, or a specific group or section for inclusion within the release.

8.4.14 Embedded leaf boundaries

An embedded boundary occurs when a leaf boundary falls within scanned or transformed document content (for example, in a **split table row**, a **split column footnote**, when reformatted as a custom table or within the context of a custom marker) . The leaves adjacent to an embedded boundary are always composed as a single unit, irrespective of whether the content of either leaf is changed or manually included.

In the following example, an `<invoice>` block contains two items:

```
<invoice>
  <item>
    <code>SL6500A</code>
    <quantity>20</quantity>
    <unit-price>14.50</unit-price>
    <total-price>290.00</total-price>
  </item>
```

```

<item>
  <code>SL7600N</code>
  <quantity>8</quantity>
  <unit-price>6.25</unit-price>
  <total-price>50.00</total-price>
</item>
</invoice>

```

The components of each `<item>` are scanned, allocated to user variables, and formatted as a custom table row by the `</item>` end tag mapping. The entire table is emitted by the enclosing `</invoice>` mapping.

When rendered, the custom table splits across the leaf boundary between leaves 17 and 19:

which produces a right-aligned cell (note that the `content` command simply emits previously scanned content). We may wish to omit the `align="right"` for `code` if we prefer the code to be left justified. Likewise we could add an explicit `colnum="N"` (where N is 1 to 4) if we wish to force the values into particular columns. This should be done if any of the value elements are optional, but will only work when the underlying table model is CALS.

Finally, the Post-content for `invoice` calls `<table-endit/>` to complete and display the table as follows:

Item Code	Quantity	Unit Price	Total Price
SL6500A	20	14.50	290.00

Item Code	Quantity	Unit Price	Total Price
SL7600N	8	6.25	50.00

Since each item represents a table row, either the Pre- or Post-content box for `item` should call `<table-nextrow/>`. While the table will overflow fill if all four values are always present, in general it's better to call `table-nextrow` explicitly as this ensures the correct row structure even if a value is missing.

but when published, the leaf boundary is positioned *after* the elements containing the scanned document content:

```

<invoice>
  <item>
    <code>SL6500A</code>
    <quantity>20</quantity>
    <unit-price>14.50</unit-price>
    <total-price>290.00</total-price>
  </item>
  <item>
    <code>SL7600N</code>
    <quantity>8</quantity>
    <unit-price>6.25</unit-price>
    <total-price>50.00</total-price>
  </item>
</invoice>
<?TL partition="Demonstration/BOM" relnum="0" folio="19" ...?>

```

13

15

17

19

21

23

25

In subsequent releases, if leaf 17 or leaf 19 is changed or manually included, TopLeaf will force an automatic leaf inclusion of the adjacent leaf, until such time as the custom table content allocated to leaf 17 is no longer rendered within leaf 19.

In many cases, the output produced for leaves that have been automatically included will be unchanged from the previously published output. You can use [output page comparison](#) to minimise the effect of automatic leaf inclusions on the size of the update pack.

8.4.15 Optimizing input change tracking

The number of point pages created when composing a partition can be minimized by merging runs of adjacent changed or included leaves. The [Optimize input change tracking](#) setting in the [partition properties](#) selects this option.

8.4.16 Page comparison

By default, a leaf will be included in the release **update pack** when the content of the leaf changes, or when the leaf is manually, conditionally or automatically included. You can also use output **page comparison** to influence the size of the update pack. This control is applied by enabling the following **partition properties**:

- Exclude all leaves with unchanged output. When this property is enabled, TopLeaf compares the updated and published output for those leaves in which the content of the leaf has changed or the leaf has been manually, conditionally or automatically included. If the output for the leaf is unchanged, then the leaf will be excluded from the update pack. Setting this option has the potential to *reduce* the size of the update pack.
- Check all pages for output changes. When this property is enabled, TopLeaf compares the updated and published output for all leaves in the partition. If the output for a leaf has changed, then that leaf will be included in the update pack. Setting this option has the potential to *increase* the size of the update pack.

8.4.17 Link lines

A link line identifies a page numbering discontinuity in a looseleaf partition. TopLeaf can automatically generate link lines at the end of a leaf group or section, at the end of a run of point pages, or at the end of a partition. Link lines are a natural consequence of page gapping, but they can also occur when leaves are removed or inserted into a document.

The format of the link line is controlled by the **linkline header/footer mapping**. The link line is a single line message such as: **Your next page is** Link lines are declared by creating a fixed block outside the data area for each of the page types of your layout. It is important to create a link line fixed block in every page type to ensure that a link line always appears when there is a gap. See the **Layout Editor Manual** for more information.

The value of the folio at the end of a leaf group or section can be retrieved using the `<link-folio/>` directive. If your publication style requires a link line at the end of each partition, then you must manually declare a link to another partition. The end of document link folio is declared in the **General** section of the **Indicators dialog**, using the General Indicators Link ID and Link Folio.

8.4.18 Blank back (left hand page)

Where the text that precedes a leaf or leaf group end finishes on a right hand page, TopLeaf automatically inserts a blank page unless it is operating in single page leaf mode. It is customary to include a message (for example, **INTENTIONALLY BLANK**) on this page to assure the reader that there is no missing content. The layout for the intentionally blank page can include header and footer content and the page is included within the page numbering sequence even if no page number is visible.

The content and format of this page can be controlled by setting **header/footer mappings**.

8.4.19 Single page leaves

TopLeaf provides the option of treating the leaf as a front page, instead of the usual front/back pair. Every page is composed as a right-hand page, ignoring the traditional convention of right pages: odd numbers; left pages: even numbers. By default, folios use the sequence **1, 2, 3...** for successive leaves. When point pages are needed, the numbering is as follows:

1, 1.1, 2, 2.1, 3, 3.1, 3.1.1, 3.2, 4

Point pages are treated as single page leaves.

8.4.20 Setting indicators

Indicators are a facility for holding text that can be rendered on pages of the output without being included in the data. For an explanation of how to set partition indicators see **Section 10.5.14**. The

menu item Commands » Indicators opens the **Indicators** dialog with which you can set Default Leaf Indicators for the partition. In full looseleaf, the composition engine will copy the default leaf indicators to each *new* leaf created in a release. In a mainwork, the default leaf indicators are assigned to all leaves. In an update, the default leaf indicators are assigned only to new leaves generated as a result of changes to the partition content. See **Section 10.5.14** for more details.

Next partition indicators

The indicators Link ID and Link Folio declare the link line value generated at the end of a partition. In a publication that consists of several partitions, this will normally identify the starting page for the next partition in the sequence.

The values of these indicators are accessed by the system command `<link-folio>` (normally included in the custom code for the link line fixed block – see **header/footer mappings**).

Leaf indicators

Once a full looseleaf partition has been typeset, the user can access properties for individual leaves through the menu Page » Leaf Properties.... This opens a dialog which includes an area where Leaf Indicators can be set. Leaf indicators are labeled text strings that are stored by TopLeaf as properties of the associated leaf. They can also be set with the TopLeaf API. These indicators function in the same way as partition indicators as described above.

8.4.21 Renumbering leaf groups

During the course of updating the content, new material may be added into a leaf, resulting in new leaves with point page numbers. After many changes the point page numbering may become cumbersome and unsightly. If your document content is organised within one or more leaf **groups**, you can use the TopLeaf workstation to renumber individual groups. Renumbering can consolidate part of the document, replacing point pages by a normal sequence, making use of the unused numbers in the gaps either side.

The **Renumber** dialog is opened from the menu Commands » Renumber.

The Before Renumber pane shows the existing leaf and group structure where the yellow icons identify group start leaves. Note that the leaves are numbered with the same numbers that are displayed in the leaf navigation pane even if you are using different identifiers on the rendered pages.

Click on the icon for any leaf in the group you want to renumber. The icons for the leaves that make up this section are changed from white to grey to identify them and the current number of the starting leaf is written into the Target Folio text box. Alter this number to the new start number you wish to use.

Press **Renumber >>** to test the change — TopLeaf will provide an explanatory message if the chosen number is not valid, otherwise the new leaf structure that will apply will be shown in the After Renumber pane.

If the displayed result is acceptable, press **Apply** to make this change to your partition. TopLeaf will make the changes and automatically start a composition run. Otherwise press **Cancel** to exit without making any changes.

You can also force an automatic renumbering of a leaf group when the point page level exceeds a preferred maximum, as in the following example:

```
<leaf-settings max-pointlevels="2" />
```


8.4.22 Renumbering leaf sections

In a **section** based full looseleaf publication, you can use data driven style sheet mapping rules to **conditionally** include all leaf sections or a specific leaf section. Including all leaves in a leaf section will automatically renumber the leaves in that section, as in the following example:

```
<switch>
  <case var="@type" target="revision" >
    <leaf-properties include="all" />
  </case>
</switch>
```

This action will also remove all point pages from that section.

You can also force an automatic renumbering of a leaf section when the point page level exceeds a preferred maximum, as in the following example:

```
<leaf-settings max-pointlevels="2" />
```

8.4.23 Importing existing looseleaf material

In some circumstances it may be necessary to import a set of leaf boundaries for an existing looseleaf service. A manual **leaf split** establishes a set of published leaves from an existing set of leaf boundaries. The document content declares one or more **leaf boundary markers** to identify the existing leaf boundaries. TopLeaf allocates the content between successive leaf boundary markers to one or more document leaves, then automatically moves the partition to the *published phase*.

Procedure

To import an existing set of leaf boundaries you must:

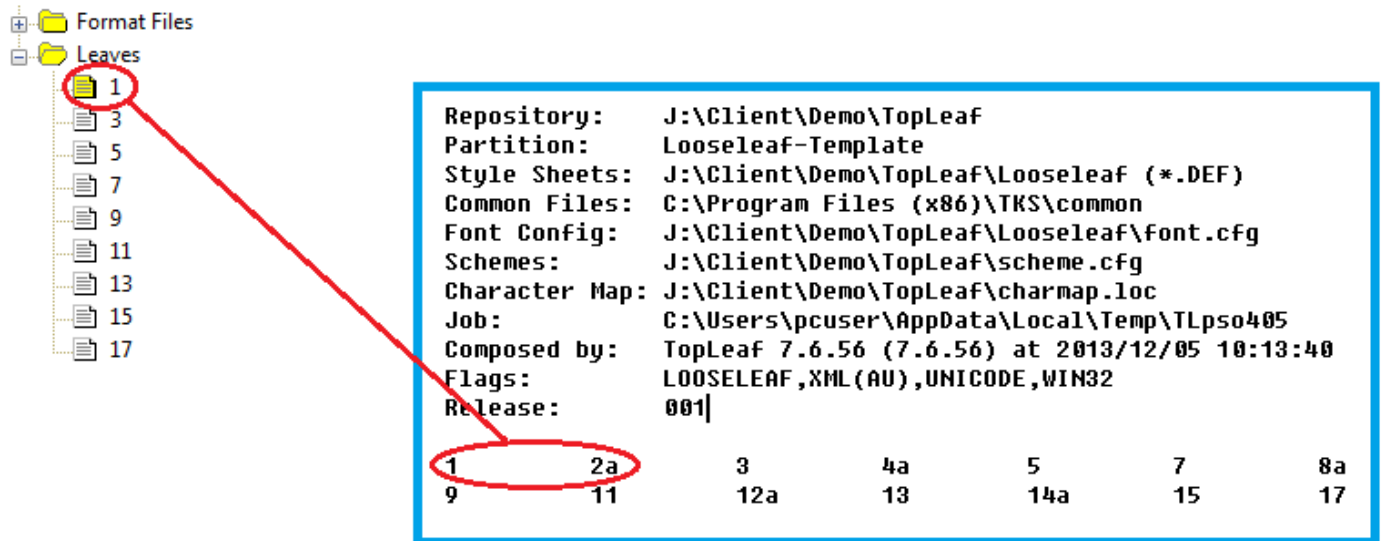
1. Insert one or more **leaf boundary markers** into your document content;
2. Assign a mainwork **release label** to identify all leaves in the initial leaf set;
3. Perform a **leaf split**;
4. Create the **Next Update** phase;
5. **Compose** the partition.

Output pages

A manual leaf split allocates the content of a mainwork to one or more leaves and then publishes the release. It does not render the content of those leaves. Rendered output pages are only produced for a manually leaf split mainwork when the content of the first **update release** is typeset.

The published output page baseline that is created when you typeset the first release will include two output pages for each leaf declared in the imported leaf set. If it is not possible to construct TopLeaf style sheet rules that produce output that is identical to your existing published pages, the rendered content for some leaves may overflow as one or more additional leaves that were not defined by the manual leaf split. The paged output associated with these additional leaves will not be accessible until the leaves that overflow are changed or manually included, or you are **checking all pages** for output changes.

In the following example, a manual leaf split creates an initial set of leaves displayed in the leaf list as **1, 3, 5 ... 17**. After typesetting the first update, an inspection of the **composition log** indicates that TopLeaf created an additional leaf **2a** when rendering the content of leaf **1**. The output pages for leaf **1** will be included in the published page baseline, but the output pages for leaf **2a** will only be included in the baseline if leaf **1** is changed or manually included, or you are checking the output for that leaf for output changes.



You can inspect the **composition log** after typesetting the first update release to confirm that the rendered leaf set matches the leaf set declared by the manual leaf split.

Identifying existing leaf boundaries

Existing leaf boundaries within a mainwork are identified using **boundary marker** processing instructions. Each initial leaf boundary marker defines:

- the point at which the content of one leaf ends and the content of the next leaf begins;
- an optional leaf folio that identifies the leaf;
- if the boundary is located after a hyphenated or non-hyphenated word break;
- if the boundary is located within a paragraph, or after a paragraph break.

The format of an initial leaf boundary marker is:

```
<?TL partition="NAME" folio="FOLIO" hyphen="VALUE" wrdbrk="VALUE"
block="VALUE" ?>
```

The following attributes can be declared when defining an existing leaf boundary:

Attribute	Type	Meaning
partition	string	The partition name.
folio	string	<p>The folio is a valid TopLeaf leaf folio consisting of a primary folio index and up to four additional point page levels (for example, 1, 1.1, or 123.1.1). The folio must conform to the page folio format defined for the partition.</p> <p>Folios that identify leaf boundaries for point pages must use a common folio level separator character. The publication style sheet must define the same folio separator character — please refer to the <leaf-settings/> directive for more details.</p> <p>By default, the initial folio for a partition is assumed to be the page number declared in the First Folio indicator. If you do not specify a folio, TopLeaf will assign the leaf content to the next available folio.</p>

Attribute	Type	Meaning
hyphen	number	<p>If defined, and non-zero, specifies a hyphenation word break within a paragraph at which the leaf boundary occurs.</p> <p>When the mainwork is leaf split, TopLeaf will position the leaf break within the word. When the leaf is rendered in the first update, TopLeaf will automatically justify the last line within the leaf and insert a hyphen at the end of that line. TopLeaf will apply the current font and paragraph style to the content that continues on the following leaf.</p> <p>It is the user's responsibility to ensure that the word break is a valid hyphenation point.</p>
wrdbrk	number	<p>If defined, and non-zero, specifies a word break point at which the leaf boundary occurs.</p> <p>It is sufficient to declare wrdbrk as a non-zero value to mark the position of a word break within a word. TopLeaf will automatically calculate the effective position of the word break offset when the leaf split is applied.</p> <p>When the mainwork is leaf split, TopLeaf will position the leaf break within the word. When the leaf is rendered in the first update, TopLeaf will automatically justify the last line within the leaf then apply the current font and paragraph style to the content that continues on the following leaf.</p>
block	number	<p>If defined and non-zero, specifies that the leaf boundary marker coincides with a paragraph boundary. If defined and zero, specifies that the leaf boundary marker is positioned within a paragraph.</p> <p>If the leaf boundary is positioned within a paragraph, then when the leaf is rendered in the first update, TopLeaf will automatically justify the last line within the leaf then apply the current font and paragraph style to the content that continues on the following leaf.</p> <p>By default, TopLeaf assumes that a leaf boundary coincides with a paragraph boundary unless it is declared immediately after a space (U+0020) character, in which case the boundary is assumed to be positioned within a paragraph. An explicit block declaration can be used to override this behaviour.</p>

The options **hyphen**, **wrdbrk**, and **block** are mutually exclusive.

In most cases, you will only need to specify the leaf folio and whether or not the leaf boundary is positioned after a hyphenated or non-hyphenated word break, as in the following example:

```
... assumes that any docu<?TL folio="7" hyphen="1" ?>ment presented to
it ...
```

When an existing leaf boundary is positioned after an inline word break or hyphenation point, the justification of the last line before the leaf boundary may cause it to be rendered with excessive interword spacing. The TopLeaf composition engine will automatically align the last line of a leaf to the left margin if the spaces between words in that line are stretched beyond a **maximum threshold**.

Positioning leaf boundaries

A leaf boundary marker declared at the beginning of a structural block must be positioned immediately before all adjacent start tags. Leaf boundaries that fall at the end of a structural block

must be positioned immediately after all adjacent end tags. For example, if a leaf begins with the first item of an itemized list, position the leaf boundary marker before the itemized list:

```
</para>  
<?TL partition="Demonstration/BOM" folio="5" ?>  
<itemizedlist>  
  <listitem>  
    <para>  
      After installing the service, start the Windows Services manager (in Windows,  
      select Control Panel/Administrative Tools/Services). Right-click on  
      the TopLeaf Server entry and select Properties. Select the Log On tab and  
      enter the account name and password.  
    </para>  
  </listitem>  
</itemizedlist>
```

Restrictions

You should be aware of the following:

- A manual leaf split can only be applied to a full looseleaf partition that uses a **partition based numbering** scheme.
- Leaf boundaries can only be positioned within content that is rendered within a data block.
- Leaf boundaries cannot be positioned within a **split table row** or within a **split column footnote**.
- All leaf folios must conform to the partition **page folio format**.
- All leaves share a common **release label**. You cannot assign different initial release labels to individual leaves.
- It may not be possible to construct TopLeaf style sheet rules that produce output that is identical to your existing published pages. In some circumstances, hyphenation and page ends will be different. This is not a problem if the TopLeaf output can be *guaranteed* to take less space.
- A leaf boundary can only be declared when that boundary has a precise corresponding location in the source document. This means that there are some situations — for example, when a leaf boundary falls in the middle of an auto-generated disclaimer or table of contents — where a leaf boundary cannot be declared.
- The TopLeaf stylesheets are not referenced when applying a manual leaf split.
- Style sheet rules or content that force **automatic leaf inclusions** can result in the repositioning of leaf boundaries when the content is typeset and published.
- The option to [Exclude all leaves with unchanged output](#) is ignored when processing the first update release created from a manually split mainwork. If you wish to use this option you must apply the changes to the second update release.
- The **restrictions** on the positioning of leaf boundaries within scanned content also apply to initial leaf boundaries.
- Correctly setting the release and page numbers is difficult at best.
- The resulting document leaf structure can contain hidden problems which only manifest at some future release.

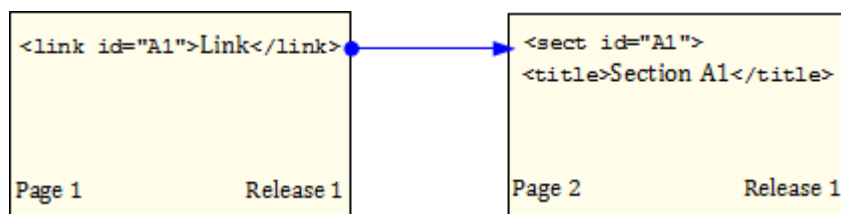
In general it may be faster and cheaper to let TopLeaf establish and manage the leaf set for the publication.

8.5 Link considerations

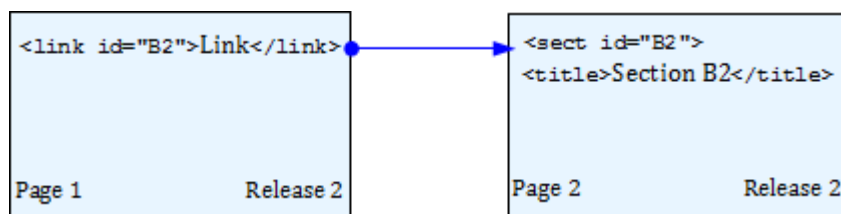
When using any form of looseleaf with output page differencing, you need to be aware of the potential for problems with **links**.

Output differencing is used for **change pages** and for **full looseleaf** when the Exclude all leaves with unchanged output option is set in the **partition properties**.

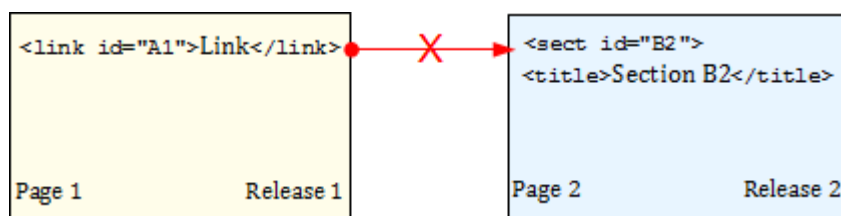
The problem is best explained by an example. Consider the following link between two pages in release 1 of a publication:



For the next release the identifier and section title are changed. When these pages are typeset they now look as follows:



When the pages are compared there is no difference on the first page, since the change to the **id** attribute has no visible effect. As a result the page from the first release is used and the link is broken.



To avoid this problem, make sure that the data used to create links does not change from one release to the next. In addition, you should avoid the use of **automatic link targets** since these will almost certainly change between releases.

9. DITA processing

This chapter describes the features in TopLeaf which can be used to simplify the processing of DITA (Darwin Information Typing Architecture) documents. To enable these features, add the following command to your **\$document** mapping:

```
<dita-properties mode="enable"/>
```

The **class** attribute is used to identify the inheritance information for each element, so it must have the correct value. The recommended way to ensure this is to use the [DITA Open Toolkit](#) to pre-process the data. This will also apply standard processing such as conref resolution and filtering.

TopLeaf provides its own pre-processor that should be used after the Open Toolkit pre-processing. The changes applied are described in [Section 9.3](#).

Note:

It is not necessary to enable DITA mode to process DITA documents; the normal facilities provided by mappings can be used to achieve equivalent results if you prefer.

9.1 Mapping selection

When DITA mode is enabled, mapping selection is enhanced to use the inheritance information in the class attribute. This allows a mapping to be used not only for a specific element, but for all elements that inherit from it.

For each element, mapping selection in DITA mode works as follows:

1. The mappings are first searched using the actual name of the element and its ancestor elements.
2. If no mapping is found using the above, the search is repeated using the actual element names as well as the element names contained in the class attributes.

For example, consider the following fragment of data:

```
<steps class="- topic/ol task/steps ">
  <step class="- topic/li task/step ">
```

and a mapping with tag-in-context of **ol/li**. When processing the **<step>** element the mapping will not be matched during step (1) above because the element names do not match. During step (2) the matching will be extended to include the element names “ol” and “li” in the class attributes, so the mapping will be matched.

During the step (2) matching the syntax “module#element” can be used to explicitly match a component of the class attribute. Thus in the example above the mapping could also have been specified as **topic#ol/topic#li**.

The [precedence rules](#) apply during the step (2) matching for deciding between mappings with the same target element name. However, there is no rule to decide between mappings with different target element names. For example if the data is:

```
<c class="- mod/c mod/b mod/a ">
```

and there are mappings for elements “a” and “b” but not “c” there is no rule for which of the “a” or “b” mappings will be selected. The mapping [priority](#) can be used to resolve any ambiguity that this causes.

9.2 Targets and links

In DITA mode some extra processing is done to simplify the creation of hyperlinks.

9.2.1 Target creation

The following automatic link targets are created:

- For each file read the target *PATH* is created, where *PATH* is the normalized path to the file.
- For any element that inherits from topic with an **id** attribute the target *PATH#TOPICID* is created.
- For any other elements with both **class** and **id** attributes the target *PATH#TOPICID/ID* is created.

Note that targets are created regardless of whether a mapping is found for an element, so you do not need to make mappings just to enable link targets.

Target positioning

For elements with a title, TopLeaf will generally place the link target immediately before the title. In order to have the target correctly positioned, anything that affects the position (such as starting a new page) should be done by the mapping for the element rather than the mapping for the title.

For example, see the **Demonstrations/DITA/book** stylesheet. The **topic** and **topic/title** mappings together provide styling for a topic title. The former takes care of starting a new page where appropriate by inserting a **<NewTopic>** custom marker.

9.2.2 Link evaluation

For any element with an **href** attribute, an extra attribute variable called **dita.fullref** is created which includes the resolved and normalized path to the link target.

To use this to create a link, you can enter **dita.fullref** in the Link To Target using attribute field of the mapping **Content tab**.

9.2.3 Topic identification

For each element that inherits from topic and has an **id** attribute, the variable **dita-full-topic-id** is set to a value that uniquely identifies the topic.

The value of the variable has the form *PATH#TOPICID* where *PATH* is the normalized path to the file containing the topic.

9.2.4 Page numbers

An **XREF** entry is automatically created for each link target. This allows the label of the page containing the target to be identified. It contains the normalized link identifier as its “title” and responds as if it was created by the %PageRef custom mapping (even if this custom mapping does not exist).

See the **xref** mapping in the **Demonstrations/DITA/book** stylesheet for an example of using this information.

9.3 DITA pre-processing

A Java program is provided for performing pre-processing on source files as described below. This should be used after the pre-processing step of the Open Toolkit. It is contained in the **tldita.jar** file in the **common/jars** folder.

9.3.1 Map titles

The main title of a map can be either specified as an attribute or with a **<title>** element. If the first child of the map does not inherit from title, a title element is created using the value of the title attribute.

9.3.2 Deferred link targets

In order to position links correctly, it is sometimes necessary to associate a link target with the title of an element, rather than the element itself. The pre-processing add an attribute called **tl.defer.id** to elements that should be processed this way. This attribute is used internally by TopLeaf; it is usually not necessary to reference it in the stylesheet.

9.3.3 Simpletables

TopLeaf can render tables that use standard CALS markup. The **<simpletable>** elements needs to be converted into CALS markup in order to render them correctly. The default action of the pre-processing is to convert any element that inherits from simpletable into an equivalent CALS table.

The **topleaf.simpletable.tagnames** property can be used to control which simpletable elements are converted. It should be set to a space-separated list of names. Only elements with tag names that occur in the list will be converted. If the property value starts with "!" the list contains names to be ignored; all elements with tag names that are not in the list will be converted.

If the simpletable contains a **relcolwidth** attribute this is used to determine the column widths. Otherwise, the pre-processor examines the content of the table to calculate column widths. The calculation depends on both the longest word in each column, and the largest total length of a cell in the column. A weighting factor is applied to each of these two values. You can adjust the factors using the following properties if the default values do not produce acceptable results. If both factors are set to zero all columns will be assigned equal widths.

topleaf.simpletable.wordweight The weighting factor for the longest word. The default value is 1.0.

topleaf.simpletable.textweight The weighting factor for the total cell length. The default value is 0.25.

9.3.4 Index terms

The pre-processing performs the following transformations on index terms:

- Nested index terms are converted into markup that contains level information.
- Index terms are moved into the correct location (for example, terms in a topic prolog are moved before the title).
- Tags are added to identify ranges.

The converted index terms are of the form:

```
<tl.index level="N"/>
```

where the level number starts from 1 for a top-level index.

Range information is indicated by **<tl.range>** elements with a **start** or **end** attribute as appropriate.

The **<index-see>**, **<index-see-also>** and **<index-sort-as>** elements are not changed.

If the **topleaf.indexterm.transform** property has the value **false** the index term transformation will be disabled.

9.4 Demonstration stylesheets

When TopLeaf is installed it creates a repository containing some sample stylesheets. The **Demonstrations/DITA** folder contains the following stylesheets:

- The **basic** stylesheet contains a minimal set of mappings for processing a DITA map and applying a simple style. It is a useful starting point for your own stylesheet.
- The **book** stylesheet is more sophisticated and implements features often required in books such as tables of contents and an index. The style is intentionally simple to make it

easier to modify it to suit your own needs.

9.4.1 The book stylesheet

The following is an explanation of some of the mappings in the **Demonstrations/DITA/book** stylesheet.

\$headfoot//booktitlealt

The **booktitle** element can contain other elements such as **booktitlealt**. Since it inherits from **title**, the **map/title** mapping assigns the content of this element to the **BookTitle** variable, which is used to display the left page header (see the **1 column** page layout and the **booktitle** header/footer mapping).

The **\$headfoot//booktitlealt** mapping suppresses the **booktitlealt** element when it is used in the context of a fixed block, so only the main title appears in the page header.

map

Some processing needs to be done at different times depending on the input data. For example, consider the appropriate time to generate the cover page. For a simple map it can be done as soon as the title content is known. For a bookmap it should be deferred until the **bookmeta** element has been processed, since it contains information that may appear on the cover.

The **map** mapping (which will be used for both **map** and **bookmap** because of inheritance) contains the following:

```
<set var="MapContent" copy="element"/>

<!-- Test whether the bookmeta element is present -->
<xmlproc source="MapContent" var="HasMeta"
select="count(//bookmeta[1])"/>
```

This creates an XML fragment from the **map** or **bookmap** and sets the **HasMeta** variable to either 0 or 1 according to whether a **bookmeta** element is present. The **map/title** mapping uses this variable to decide whether to generate the cover page immediately or to let the **bookmeta** mapping do it.

The **map** mapping also looks for a **frontmatter** element. If one is found it sets the page numbering style to roman numerals.

bookmeta

This mapping demonstrates the use of “pull” processing for an element. The mapping scans and suppresses the element, and creates an XML fragment from it.

Only the required information is extracted for later use; everything else is ignored.

topicref

This is the most complex mapping in the stylesheet, and plays an important role in defining the structure of the document. The following explain parts of its pre-content.

```
<stack var="TopicLevel" value="{TopicLevel}+1"/>
<stack var="TopicContext" string="{TopicContext}"/>
```

The use of the **stack** command is important, since **topicref** elements can be nested. Using **stack** instead of **set** restores the previous value of the variable when the end tag of this element is processed. The value of **TopicContext** may be altered by what follows; this command makes sure that the former value will be restored.

```
<!-- set the navigation title -->
<set var="Topicref" copy="element"/>
```

```
<xmlproc source="Topicref" var="Navtitle"
select="topicmeta/navtitle/node()"/>
<if var="Navtitle" target="">
  <set var="Navtitle" string="{@navtitle}"/>
</if>
```

The DITA 1.2 specification says that a **navtitle** element should be used in preference to the attribute value, so the above attempts to find a **navtitle** element and extract its content. If this produces an empty result, the attribute value is used.

```
<case var="@class" test="matches" target="* bookmap/chapter *">
  <set var="TopicContext" string="C"/>

  <if var="@href" target="#IMPLIED">
    <!-- dummy topic for chapter -->
    <NewTopic level="C1"/>
    <Title level="C1">{Navtitle}</Title>
  </if>
</case>
```

This is one of the cases in the switch statement; at most one of these will be executed. The above is executed if a chapter element, or something that inherits from it, is being processed. The test for **#IMPLIED** is the correct way to test for a missing attribute in TopLeaf. If there is no topic specified for this chapter, a title is generated using the value for **Navtitle** created above, since the **topic/title** mapping will not be triggered in this case.

```
<switch>
<case var="@processing-role" target="resource-only">
  <!-- ignore objects included as resources -->
</case>
<case var="@href" target="#IMPLIED">
  <!-- ignore if there is no referenced object -->
</case>
<case>
  <read file="{document-folder}/{@href}" use-fragment="yes"/>
</case>
</switch>
```

The final part reads the referenced topic unless it is not directly part of the document content.

The **TopicContext** and **TopicLevel** variables are used in the **topic** and **topic/title** mappings to apply an appropriate style.

topic//topic

If a file contains multiple nested topics, this mapping is used for the inner topics. It increments the level counter so the topic title will be rendered with the appropriate style. The **topic** mapping is the one used for the top-level topic in a file.

xref

This mapping creates a link using the value of the **dita.fullref** attribute. This attribute is not present in the data — it is added internally by TopLeaf.

The page number is added to the link content by calling the **%AddPage** custom mapping. This extracts the page number from the entry in the xref file that corresponds to the link target. It relies on the following:

- The automatic page number references described in [Section 9.2.4](#).
- The xref file is read in the **\$document** mapping.

- The **tl:xref** mapping assigns the xref content to the **Xref** variable as an XML fragment.

figurelist

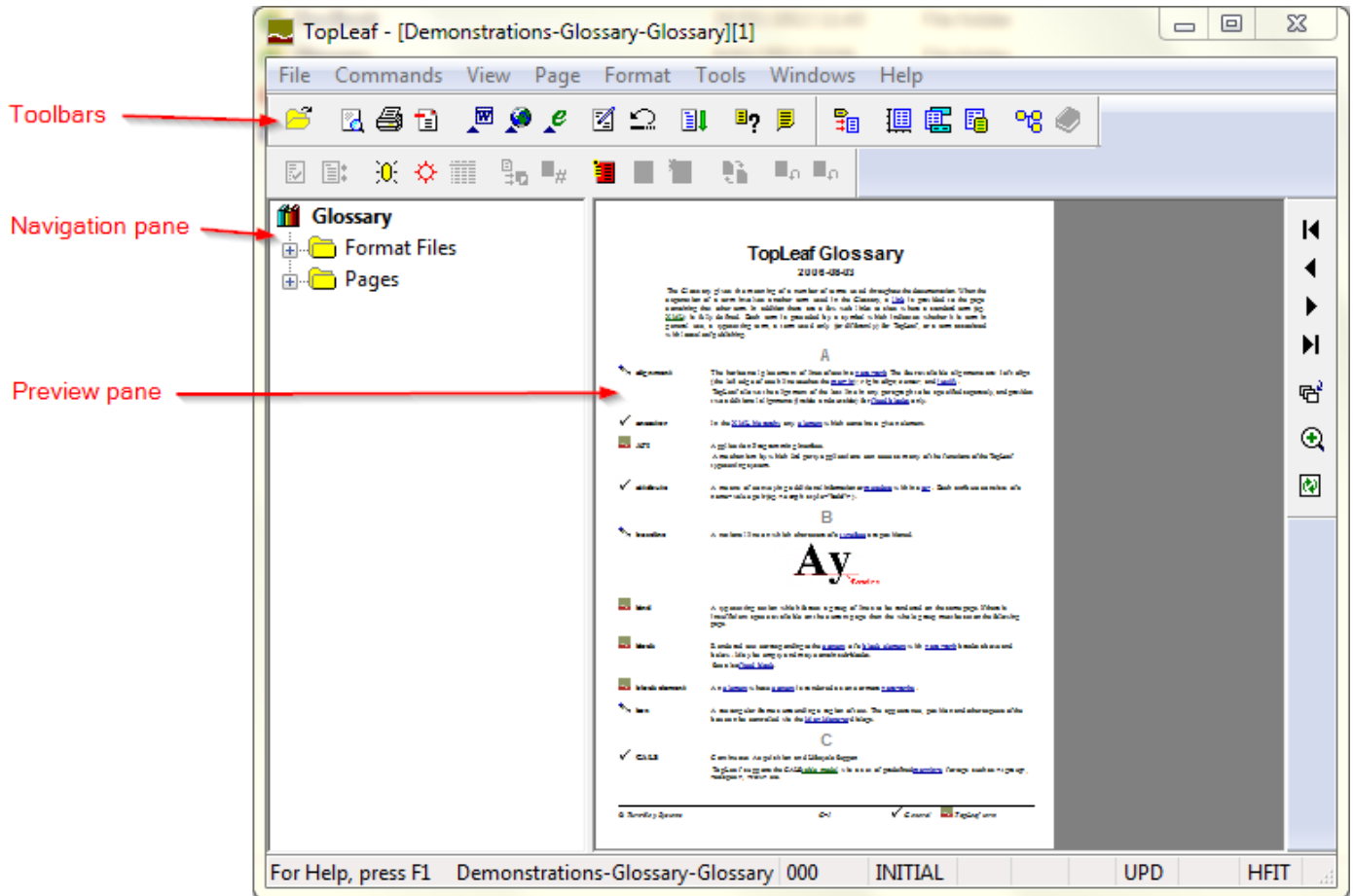
This also relies on the xref content being read into the **Xref** variable.

```
<xmlproc source="Xref" var="FigureCount"
  select="count(tlx:xrefline[@class='%FigureRef'])"/>
```

The command above sets the **FigureCount** variable to the number of xref entries generated by the **%FigureRef** custom marker. If the value of this variable is greater than zero, the code below it sends the entries to the input stream to produce the list of figures.

10. Workstation reference

The TopLeaf workstation is a Microsoft Windows application that allows you to create and work in one or more repositories. This chapter describes the components of the application interface top level window as shown below



The diagram illustrates one of several possible configurations for the top level application window. The appearance can be customized:

- by changing the position of the toolbars. To reposition a toolbar, click the mouse anywhere in the toolbar that is not occupied by a button or other control and drag it to a new position. Toolbars can dock at any of the four edges of the window.
- by selecting the appropriate options in the View menu to hide or show the toolbars.

10.1 Preview pane

This shows a preview of the pages made by the most recent composition run for the selected partition. The preview shows an approximation of the final output. There are some types of output (such as rotated text) that may not display the same way as they will appear in the published output.

The **Page Up** and **Page Down** keys can be used to move through the pages sequentially.

The Page menu and Preview toolbar can be used to control the preview display. Right-click in the preview pane to open the Zoom menu.







10.2 Navigation pane



The navigation pane has three components: the partition icon; the Format Files tree; and the Pages tree.

10.2.1 The partition icon

At the top of the pane is an icon representing the current partition. The icon indicates the type of partition:

-  — A non-looseleaf partition or a **change pages** partition containing its source content.
-  — A non-looseleaf partition or a change pages partition which links to source content held outside the repository.
-  — A **full looseleaf** partition which contains its source content.
-  — A full looseleaf partition which links to content held outside the repository. This can only be an unpublished initial release, since a published full looseleaf partition always contains content that is held inside the repository.
-  — A partition with read-only access. This usually means that the partition folder and the partition content have the read-only attribute set. TopLeaf requires read-write access to the partition and all partition content. You must remove the read-only permission to fully access the partition.
-  — A partition whose type or properties cannot be determined. This usually means that one or more components managed by TopLeaf and stored within the partition are missing or have been corrupted.

Right clicking on this icon raises a menu giving quick access to a number of partition related functions:

- **Edit** — edit the partition source files (see [Section 4.5](#)).
- **Compose** — typeset the current partition.
- **Print** — calls a restricted version of the Print Partition dialog that always prints the whole partition (see [Section 10.5.6](#)).
- **Replace Partition Document** — Replace the content of a partition with content copied from an external document file, or if the partition content is linked, associate a different document with the partition. You can also change a partition from a linked partition to a copy partition, or from a copy partition to a linked partition. See [Commands » Replace Partition Document ...](#) for more details.
- **Add Files to Partition** — calls a dialog allowing additional source files to be **copied** and stored within the partition (see [Commands » Add Files to Partition](#)).
- **Edit Partition Document List** — allows the list of the files stored within the partition to be updated (see [Commands » Edit Partition Document List](#)).
- **Indicators** — calls the Partition Indicators dialog to examine/update the current values.
- **Label this Release** — calls the Label Release dialog to assign an identifier string to the current release.

- **Properties** — calls the [Partition Properties](#) dialog to examine/update the current values.

10.2.2 The Format Files tree

The [Format Files](#) tree is provided for maintaining publication style sheets created for TopLeaf 6.2 or earlier.

10.2.3 The Pages tree

For a non-looseleaf or a **change pages** partition, the [Pages](#) tree shows a list of pages created during the most recent typesetting run. For a **full looseleaf** partition, this tree displays the partition leaf list and is labeled the [Leaf](#) tree.

Double clicking on a page icon will display an image of the typeset page in the preview pane.

Right clicking on an icon brings up a menu with the following options:

- **Preview** — equivalent to a double click, displays the page in the preview pane.
- **Print** — opens the [Print](#) dialog (see [Section 10.5.6](#)).
- **Create PDF** — opens the [Create PDF](#) dialog (see [Section 10.5.7](#)).

In a change pages partition or a full looseleaf partition the icons in this tree also indicate the page or leaf status. For example, the status information can indicate whether the page or leaf has been altered since the last release, or whether it is the start of a leaf group or leaf section. See [Section 8.3.4](#) for the icons used in change pages partition and [Section 8.4.10](#) for a description of the icons used in a full looseleaf partition.

10.3 Menus

10.3.1 File

File » Open ...

Calls the [Open dialog](#) to open or create a partition.

File » Close

Closes the selected partition. You may want to do this to allow another user to modify the partition, or to set global TopLeaf **preferences** (for example, selecting the repository root directory).

File » Save As ...

Calls the [Save As dialog](#), which saves the source of the current partition as a single XML or SGML document.

File » Publication

Contains options for printing, creating a single PDF, or set of filing instructions for all partitions within a publication. After choosing an output option, use the [Open](#) dialog to select a publication.

File » Export ...

Brings up a submenu which can export one of five automatically generated documents:

- a [Table of Contents](#);
- a list of cross references ([XREFs](#));
- an [Index](#);
- a list of partition indicators;
- filing instructions (looseleaf only).

All except the filing instructions contain an option to select either the whole partition or the update pack as the source. See [Chapter 6](#) for information on the generation of a Table of Contents or Index.

File » Partition Properties ...

Opens the [Partition Properties](#) dialog for the current partition.

File » Filing Instructions ...

Brings up a dialog which displays the filing instructions for the current release. From this dialog you can print or export the filing instructions. See [Section 6.4.1](#) for more information.

File » Transform to

Contains options for creating RTF or HTML [secondary output formats](#).

File » Print Preview

Opens a separate preview window, similar to the preview pane but with its own navigation controls and the ability to be resized to view more of the output page.

File » Print Special

Contains options for quickly printing the update pack, the entire partition, the composition log, or partition filing instructions. The selected output is sent to the default printer without opening a dialog. For a non-looseleaf partition, only the composition log may be printed from this menu.

File » Print

Opens the [Print dialog](#) for the current partition.

File » Create PDF

Opens the [Create PDF dialog](#) for the current partition.

File » Print Setup ...

Opens a standard Windows dialog for setting printer options.

File » Preferences ...

Opens the [Preferences dialog](#), which allows TopLeaf general preferences to be specified.

File » PDF Profiles ...

Opens the [PDF profiles editor](#), which allows you to set up options for PDF creation.

File » 1–5

Immediately above the exit command are listed up to five recently opened partition names. Clicking on one of these, or pressing the numbers 1 to 5 will open the corresponding partition.

File » Exit

Terminates the program. Any open partitions are automatically closed.

10.3.2 Commands

Commands » Unlock

Removes any edit or composition lock current applied to the partition.

Commands » Undo

Opens the Confirm Undo dialog, which allows previous changes to source files and publication style sheets to be reversed. You cannot use this option to undo edit changes to linked source documents.

Warning:

Only attempt to undo a change to a publication styles sheet from the same partition in which the change was originally applied. Failing to do this may lead to unpredictable results.

Changes to the page layout must be reversed in the **Layout Editor**.

Commands » Cancel Update

Discards the current update and returns the partition to the most recently published release. Note that this command *cannot be reversed*.

Commands » Cancel Publish

Discards the published phase and returns the partition to the previous update phase. The update can only be republished after composition.

Commands » Edit

Edit the partition content. The editor used is determined by the current preferences (see **Section 10.5.3**).

Commands » Compose

Typesets the current partition.

Commands » Debug

Switches debug logging on or off.

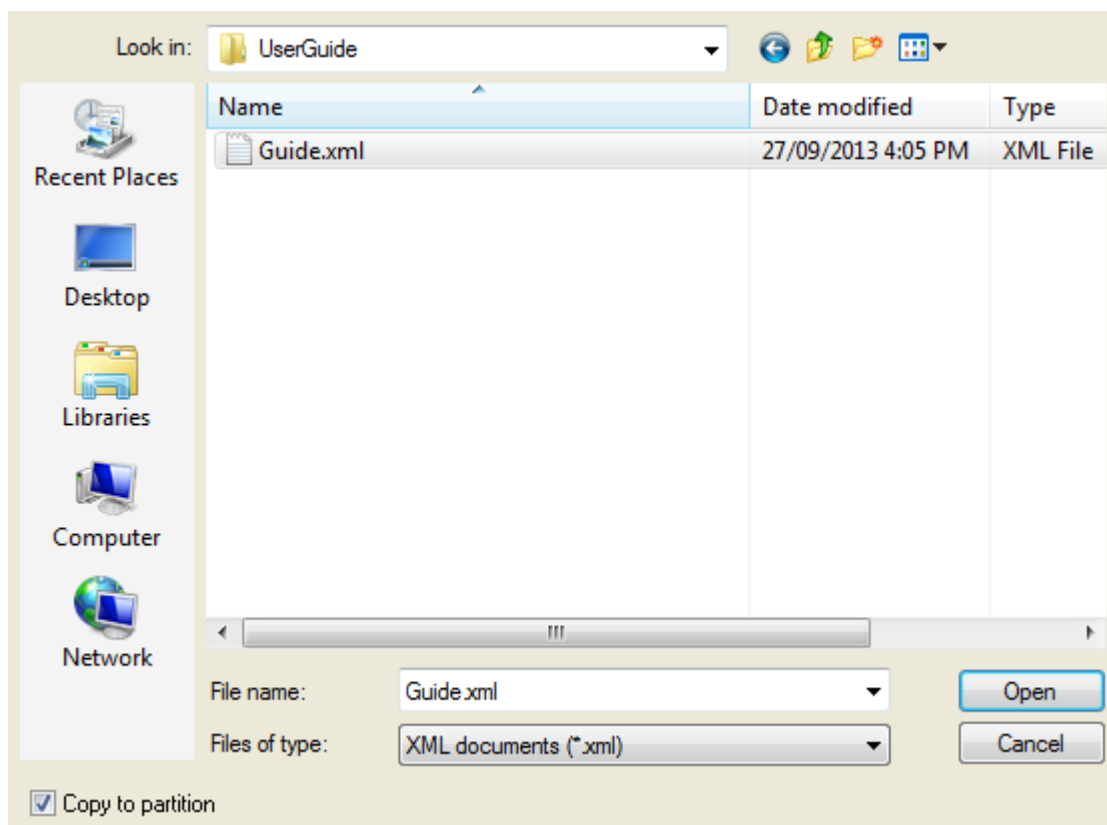
Commands » Renumber ...

This option will **renumber** the leaf group folio numbering sequence in a **full looseleaf** partition that uses a partition based numbering scheme.

Commands » Replace Partition Document...

You can use this option to replace the content of a partition with content copied from an external document file, or if the partition content is linked, associate a different document with the partition.

For a non-looseleaf partition, a **change pages** partition, or a **full looseleaf** mainwork release, you can also change a partition from a **linked partition** to a copy partition, or from a copy partition to a linked partition. To force TopLeaf to establish a link between the partition and the selected document, select the replacement document, then clear the Copy to partition check box. To force TopLeaf to store a copy of the selected document within the partition, select the replacement document, and tick the Copy to partition check box, as shown in the following example:



The replacement content for a **full looseleaf** update is always copied to the partition, because the content is leaf split as it is copied. This option is disabled for full looseleaf updates that use **visible leaf boundary markers** to identify the published leaf boundaries.

Commands » Add Files to Partition ...

Use the **Add Files to Partition ...** option to add one or more source documents to the **list** of documents stored within the partition.

Commands » Edit partition document list...

Use this command to delete or rearrange entries within the **list** of documents stored within the partition.

Commands » Leaf Split

TopLeaf can initialize a looseleaf partition from an **existing set of leaf boundaries**. A leaf split allocates the content between successive user defined leaf boundary markers to one or more document leaves before automatically **publishing** the partition.

Commands » Stylesheet Upgrade

A new stylesheet format using XML documents is available for version 7.6 onwards. This command allows you to convert a stylesheet created by an older version into the new format.

This command is disabled if:

- The stylesheet is already in the new format, or
- The publication was created with a version of TopLeaf prior to 7.2, or
- The [Legacy font compatibility](#) format option is selected, or
- The publication is in read-only mode (for example, it is in the published phase).

If the upgrade is not successful, try opening each of the [Map](#), [Header & Footers](#) and [Notes & Running Heads](#) managers and pressing [OK](#). This will bring the stylesheet version up to date. You should then be able to upgrade the stylesheet.

Commands » Indicators...

Opens the [Indicators](#) dialog to examine or update the current partition indicator values.

Commands » Label this Release

Opens the [Label this Release](#) dialog to assign an identifier string to the current release.

By default, TopLeaf identifies each partition release with a sequential number starting from **0**. The [Label Release](#) dialog provides a way to assign a descriptive string (for example, a date or a release title) that uniquely identifies the release. You can reference the partition release label by including the `{release-label}` system variable in your stylesheet mappings. Alternatively, your stylesheet mappings can assign the partition release label using the `<release-properties/>` directive.

Commands » Refresh published pages

Refresh the published output pages to reflect the current stylesheet formatting rules, while retaining the published release label for each leaf.

Commands » Publish

Moves the partition into the published phase. By default, all publishing controls are disabled until a partition is typeset without error. The [partition properties](#) includes an option to allow you to publish a [change pages](#) release if there are warnings but not errors.

Commands » Next Update

When the partition is in the published phase, this command creates a new update phase and allowing the partition content to be modified.

10.3.3 View

Click to switch on/off the following:

- Button toolbars — provides options:
 - Standard toolbar (see [Section 10.4.2](#))
 - Preview toolbar (see [Section 10.4.5](#))
 - Stylesheet toolbar (see [Section 10.4.3](#))
 - Looseleaf toolbar (see [Section 10.4.4](#))
- Indicators display (see [Section 10.4.6](#))
- Keywords display (see [Section 10.4.8](#))
- Status Bar display (see [Section 10.4.9](#))

View » Preview Changed Pages in a Separate Window

Opens a separate preview window to display all pages that marked for inclusion in the release [update pack](#).

View » Only show changed pages in Page Tree List

Changes the page or leaf list in the [navigation pane](#) to display only those pages or leaves that are in the release [update pack](#). This option is only available for [looseleaf](#) partitions. Click again to restore the original view.

View » Show Boundary Markers when Editing Partition

This item is only enabled in a **full looseleaf** partition. When the partition document is edited, processing instructions identifying the leaf and boundary markers are inserted into the data.

View » Composition Log

Uses the [Other Files](#) editor to open the composition log file created by the most recent typesetting run.

View » Publish/Update Phase

Toggles the current partition view from the current update phase to the previous publish phase and vice versa.

10.3.4 Page

The page menu is used to *navigate* your way through a document, adjust the view of pages *displayed* in the preview pane, and examine or change the *properties* of the page currently selected in the page tree.

Page » Previous

Preview previous page.

Page » Next

Preview following page.

Page » Go To ...

Calls the [Go To Page dialog](#) to select a page to preview.

Page » Facing Pages

Previews pages as left/right pairs. Click again to restore default view.

Preview » Full Page

View full page height. Click again to restore default view.

Page » Zoom

Opens a menu to allow you to select a magnification factor for the preview.

Page » Refresh

Refresh preview to remove any screen drawing errors.

10.3.5 Format

Format » Mappings...

The **map editor** is used to create and maintain a set of stylesheet rules that will be applied when typesetting the partition.

Format » Page Layout...

The **layout editor** is used to specify the size and shape of the page types that can be referenced when typesetting a document.

Format » Headers & Footers...

The **Header & Footer Manager** is used to define the stylesheet rules for fixed blocks created by the Page Layout Editor.

This option is only available when using the legacy Map Manager.

Format » Notes & Running Heads...

The **Notes Manager** is used to manage the stylesheet rules for footnotes, sidenotes and running heads.

This option is only available when using the legacy Map Manager.

Format » Import Stylesheet Image...

This allows you to select an image file and copy it into the **graphics** folder of the publication. This allows it to be used by setting the **image search path** to **{publication-folder}/graphics**.

Font Configuration ...

Opens the **Font Configuration** editor.

Color Palette...

Opens the **Color Palette** editor.

Options

Opens the **Options** dialog.

Format » Generate Mappings from XML...

TopLeaf can automatically generate a set of initial tag mappings for a publication by interpreting an XML document file. The mappings created provide a starting point from which a more complete mapping set can be developed. This menu option scans an XML document and creates an initial set of tag mappings from the tags declared within that document.

This option is only available when using the legacy Map Manager. See **Import mappings** in the Mapping Guide for information on the equivalent function in the new Map Editor.

Warning:

If you generate a new set of tag mappings for a legacy TopLeaf publication all existing tag and custom markers mappings will be overwritten.

Format » Import Mappings from CSS...

TopLeaf provides a means of initializing the style for a publication by interpreting a CSS (Cascading Style Sheet) file. It is important to note that TopLeaf and CSS use different models for describing style, so it is not possible to do a full conversion. Instead, the mappings created represent a starting point from which more complete mappings can be developed.

This menu option imports a CSS Stylesheet to create an initial set of TopLeaf mappings. See **Section 4.7.2** for more information.

This option is only available when using the legacy Map Manager. See **Import mappings** in the Mapping Guide for information on the equivalent function in the new Map Editor.

Warning:

If you create a new set of tag mappings for a legacy TopLeaf publication by importing a CSS stylesheet, all existing tag and custom markers mappings will be overwritten.

Format » DTD File

You can force TopLeaf to use a specific document type declaration by defining a primary DTD file. This menu option edits the primary DTD file using the “Other Files” editor defined in the [preferences](#).

Format » Catalog File

Entities within a document type declaration can be resolved using the OASIS catalog mechanism. This menu option edits the partition catalog file using the “Other Files” editor defined in the [preferences](#).

Legacy Format Files

This menu allows the user to directly access the format files used by a TopLeaf legacy partition or publication. From here, you can edit a legacy style, macro or mapping file. You can also export a set of legacy font macros for use in other publications.

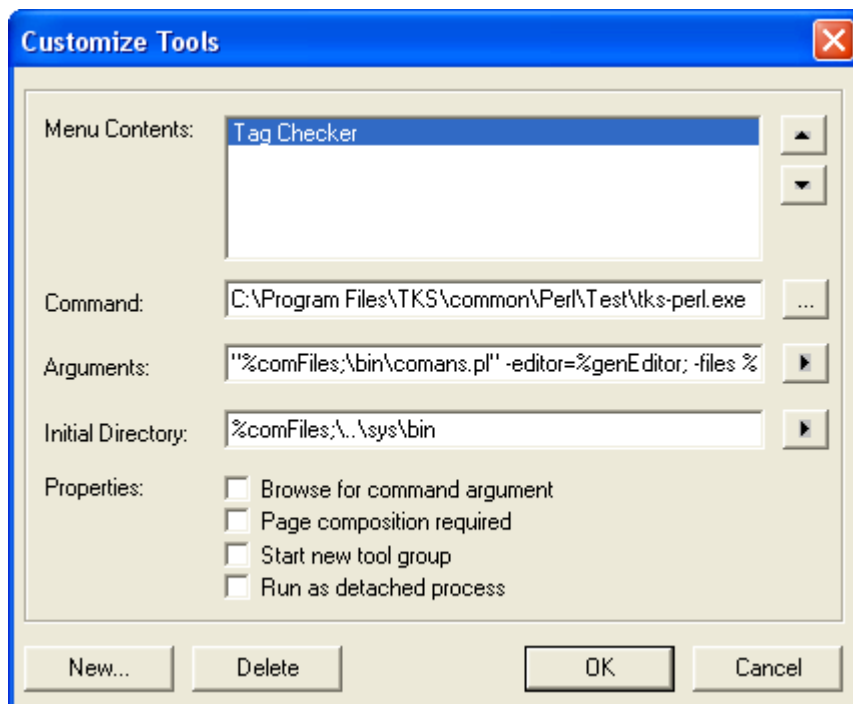
Warning:

Direct access to TopLeaf’s underlying format files is only required when working with legacy partitions.

10.3.6 Tools

Allows the user to create and invoke custom tools.

To add an item to this menu, select [Customize ...](#) to open the [Customize Tools](#) dialog:



To create a new custom tool, press the [New...](#) button to open the [New Tool](#) dialog. Enter the name of a custom tool that will appear in the [Tools](#) menu.

The [Command:](#) field identifies the executable file that will be run when the tool is invoked.

Arguments

The Arguments: field defines the arguments passed to the command. There are a number of values of the form *%param*; that can be inserted into the arguments. These change according to the partition which is open when you invoke the tool, so you can create tools that work on many partitions. The variable can be selected from the menu which opens when you press the button to the right of this field.

The argument variables that can be chosen from this menu are:

- Partition » Name — the path of the current partition (relative to the TopLeaf repository).
- Partition » Update Document — the current work-in-progress XML document, no leaf markers.
- Partition » Published Document — the current published XML document, no leaf markers.
- Partition » Folder — the file path of the partition folder.
- Partition » Publication Folder — the file path of the publication folder for this partition.
- Partition » Leaf Folder — for an update, this would be the folder that contains the partition document.
- Partition » Current Leaf — currently selected leaf in leaf list.
- Preview » Changed Pages — the set of changed pages (looseleaf only).
- Preview » Partition Pages — the set of all pages in the partition
- Preview » Published Pages — the published page set.
- Dependencies » Format File — the file path of the mapping rules file used by the publication. This is an XML description of the mappings created by the Map Manager.
- Dependencies » DTD File — the file path of the DTD used by the publication.
- Dependencies » Catalog File — the file path of the catalog file used by the publication.
- Exports » Partition Index File — an extracted index file, generated from the current phase.
- Exports » Partition TOC File — an extracted TOC file, generated from the current phase.
- Exports » Partition XREF File — an extracted XREF file, generated from the current phase.
- Exports » Changed Leaf Indicators — a list of indicators for the set of all changed leaves.
- Exports » Partition Leaf Indicators — a list of indicators for the set of all leaves.
- Exports » Filing Instructions — the current filing instructions, as an XML document.
- Exports » Composition Log — output log file from the last run of the composition engine.
- Exports » Partition PDF File — PDF for all pages in the currently selected phase (update or publish).
- Transforms » RTF (Rich Text Format) — RTF for all pages in the current update.
- Transforms » HTML (Web page) — HTML for all pages in the current update.
- Properties » Release Label — the identifier of the current release as defined through the [Label this Release](#) dialog.
- Properties » Current Phase — either **UPDATE** or **PUBLISH**.
- Properties » Partition Type — **TOPBOOK** for a non-looseleaf or change pages partition, or **TOPLEAF** for a full looseleaf partition.
- Properties » Markup Language — the markup language used by data in this partition; either **XML**, **SGML** or **GENCODE**.
- Preferences » Program Files Folder — the file path of the folder where TopLeaf is installed (**C:\Program Files\TKS** by default).
- Preferences » TopLeaf Repository — the file path of the folder containing the TopLeaf repository.
- Preferences » Common Files Folder — the file path of the folder containing common data (**C:\Program Files\TKS\common** by default).

- [Preferences » XML/SGML Editor](#) — the executable file run to edit a data file in an XML or SGML partition.
- [Preferences » Other Files Editor](#) — the executable file run to edit files other than XML or SGML.

Initial Directory

The [Initial Directory](#): field allows you to set the directory which is current when the command starts. You can make this dependent on the current partition by choosing one of the entries in the menu which opens by pressing the button on the right of the field.

Properties

You may also select the following [Properties](#): for the command:

- [Browse for command argument](#) — if this is checked, when the command is run the user is prompted to select a file. The path to this file is appended to the command arguments.
- [Page composition required](#) — when checked, running the command causes the partition to be typeset if necessary.
- [Start new tool group](#) — this causes a separator to appear in the menu before this item.
- [Run as detached process](#) — when checked, control is returned to TopLeaf as soon as the command is started, instead of waiting for it to terminate.

10.3.7 Windows

This allows you to control windows that have been opened within the main application window, for example the page preview window or the composition log editor.

Select a window from this menu to bring it to the front. Select [Close All](#) to close all windows opened from the main window.

10.3.8 Help

Help » Contents

Opens the on-line version of this documentation, equivalent to pressing the **F1** key.

Help » Enter License Keys

Opens the [License Keys dialog](#).

Help » Turn-Key Systems Home Page

Open the [Turn-Key Systems](#) website in a browser. You can use this to check for new versions of the software.

Help » About TopLeaf

Opens the [About TopLeaf](#) dialog, listing the build number of the installed Toplevel distribution, your TopLeaf license key, and any relevant copyright information.

10.3.9 Menu accelerator keys

Menu accelerator keys provide fast access to frequently used menu commands without having to use the mouse to select a menu option. Accelerator keys are key combinations consisting of the letter key pressed along with the [Ctrl](#) or the [Ctrl-Alt](#) key.

The following table describes the set of available menu accelerator keys:

Key	Description	Where Defined
Ctrl-A	Cancel the current update	Commands » Cancel Update
Ctrl-C	Edit the primary catalog file	Format » Catalog File
Ctrl-D	Edit the primary DTD file	Format » DTD File
Ctrl-E	Edit the partition document	Commands » Edit
Ctrl-F	View the partition filing instructions	Section 6.4.1
Ctrl-J	View the composition log file	View » Composition Log
Ctrl-L	Open the page layout editor	Layout Editor
Ctrl-M	Open the map editor	Map Editor
Ctrl-O	Open partition	Section 10.5.1
Ctrl-P	Print one or more pages from the partition	Section 10.5.6
Ctrl-T	Compose the partition	Commands » Compose
Ctrl-V	Preview the current update in a separate window	File » Print Preview
Ctrl-Alt-P	Select the partition published phase	View » Published phase
Ctrl-Alt-U	Select the partition update phase	View » Update phase

10.4 Toolbars

10.4.1 Title bar

The window title bar displays the path of the current partition and the label of the page currently displayed in the preview pane.

10.4.2 Standard toolbar



The standard toolbar contains the most commonly used TopLeaf functions.

The File group



The File group is used to open a partition:

- **Open Partition** — open an existing partition or create a new one — see the [Open dialog](#).

The Output group



The Output group is used to print or preview typeset jobs:

- **Preview Pages** — calls a separate preview window to display the pages — see [Print Preview](#) in [Section 10.3.1](#).
- **Print Pages** — opens the [Print dialog](#) for the current partition.
- **Create PDF** — opens the [Create PDF dialog](#) for the current partition.

The Transform group



The Transform group allows the production of alternate forms of output. See [Transform to](#) in [Section 10.3.1](#).

The Edit group



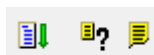
The Edit group is used to edit the partition document source file and undo stylesheet changes:

- **Edit Source** — edits the document source file — see [Edit](#) in [Section 10.3.2](#).
- **Undo last action** — reverse the last stylesheet change — see [Undo](#) in [Section 10.3.2](#).

Warning:

Only attempt to undo a change to a publication styles sheet from the same partition in which the change was originally applied. Failing to do this may lead to unpredictable results.

The Compose group



The Compose group is used to control typesetting:

- **Compose** — typesets the current partition — see [Compose](#) in [Section 10.3.2](#).
- **Toggle Debug Mode** — switches debug logging on or off — see [Debug](#) in [Section 10.3.2](#).
- **View Log File** — edits the log file created from the last typeset run — see [Composition Log](#) in [Section 10.3.3](#).

10.4.3 Stylesheet toolbar



The Stylesheet toolbar allows you to control output format:

- **Mappings** — specifies the stylesheet mapping rules for document content.
- **Page Layout** — specifies the size and shape of output pages, as well as how information is positioned on each page.
- **Header & Footer Manager** — specifies the stylesheet mapping rules for page headers and footers. This is only available when using the legacy Map Manager.
- **Notes Manager** — specifies the stylesheet mapping rules for footnotes, sidenotes, running heads, and floats. This is only available when using the legacy Map Manager.
- **DTD** — opens the top level DTD document file for editing.
- **Catalog** — opens the OASIS catalog file for editing.

10.4.4 Looseleaf toolbar



This toolbar is relevant only to **Looseleaf** jobs.

- **Show changed leaf set** — toggle [Only show changed pages in page tree list](#) in the **View** menu.
- **Show leaf boundaries when editing looseleaf documents** — toggle [Show boundary](#)

markers when editing partition in the **View** menu.

- **Indicators** — open the **Indicators** dialog.
- **Label release** — open the **Label Release** dialog.
- **Filing instructions** — displays the **filing instructions**.
- **Leaf split** — perform a **leaf split**.
- **Renumber a leaf group** — open the **Renumber** dialog.
- **Publish the partition** — execute the **Publish** command.
- **Review published boundaries** — review or adjust the position of published **boundary markers**. This option is enabled from the **partition properties** dialog.
- **Create next update** — execute the **Next Update** command.
- **Toggle phases** — switch the preview display between the published pages and the update pages.
- **Cancel update** — execute the **Cancel Update** command.
- **Cancel published phase** — execute the **Cancel Publish** command.

10.4.5 Preview toolbar



The Preview toolbar controls the page preview displayed in the **preview pane**.

The Navigation group



The Navigation group selects which output page to preview:

- **Go to first page** — previews the first page in the document.
- **Goto the previous page** — previews the previous page.
- **Goto the next page** — previews the following page.
- **Goto the last page** — previews the last page in the document.
- **Goto a specific page** — Open the **Go To Page** dialog and select a page to preview.

The Display group



The Display group controls the sizing of the output view:

- **Zoom View** — magnify page view — see **Zoom** in **Section 10.3.4**.
- **Refresh View** — refresh the preview pane to remove any screen artefacts — see **Refresh** in **Section 10.3.4**.

10.4.6 Indicators

TopLeaf can display up to three information bars. Bars can be enabled or disabled using the **View menu**. You can then drag and drop each indicator bar to a suitable location on the screen.

10.4.7 Partition indicators



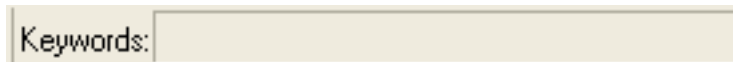
This bar displays the values of certain indicators within the current partition:

- **ID** — the identifier for the current partition.

- **First Folio** — the page number of the first page in the partition.
- **Link ID** — the identifier for the following partition in a multi-partition publication.
- **Link Folio** — the first page number of the following partition in a multi-partition publication.

These and other indicators can be set using the [Partition Indicators](#) dialog. See [Indicators](#) in [Section 10.5.14](#).

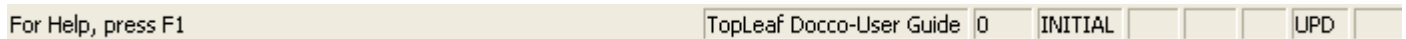
10.4.8 Keywords



The Keywords bar displays an identifying string which is normally printed on every page outside the usual print area. This allows production staff to identify individual job sheets without affecting the overall appearance of the rendered document.

The keywords field can be modified by using the [Indicators dialog](#). You can also open this dialog by right-clicking the Keywords field and selecting [Modify Keywords](#).

10.4.9 Status bar



The Status bar gives a visual indication of the current job status. The left of the bar is a Help area. When the cursor is held over a button or control, a brief description appears in this area. If the cursor is not over an item of interest, a default help message is displayed.

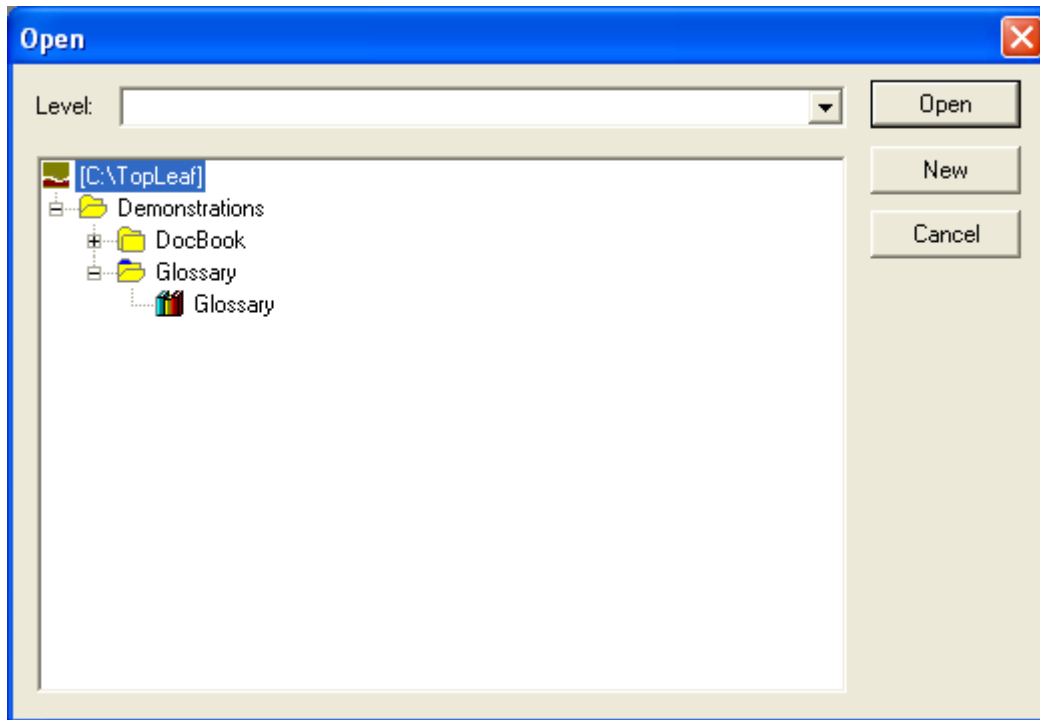
The right half of the bar is divided into eight information boxes as follows:

- names of current publication and partition (see [Section 4.1](#));
- current release name;
- shows one of **INITIAL** (looseleaf initial release or non-looseleaf job), **PUBLISH** (partition locked), or **UPDATE** (looseleaf incremental release);
- shows **DBG** when running in debug mode (see Debug in [Section 10.3.2](#));
- shows **MRK** when running in [looseleaf](#) marker mode;
- shows **SPL** when running in single page looseleaf mode (see [Section 8.4.19](#));
- shows one of **UPD** (update phase, normal operation), **PUB** (publish phase, partition locked), or **MOD** (update phase, view modified looseleaf pages only);
- shows **ERR** if the previous typesetting run issued any errors.

10.5 Dialogs

The following describes the operation of the dialogs that can be opened from the main window. For a description of the map editor, see the TopLeaf [Mapping Guide](#). The [Layout Editor Manual](#) describes how to control the way formatted output is positioned on the page.

10.5.1 Open dialog




The Open dialog is used to open existing partitions in a TopLeaf repository, and to create new repository levels and partitions.

The Open dialog can be opened by selecting File » Open... or by pressing the  button.

The dialog consists of two main components:

- a Level field that shows the repository level or partition pathname, and
- a repository tree that shows the overall structure of the repository.

The root item of the repository tree shows the file system path of the current repository.

Publications are shown with an  icon. Partition icons indicate the type of partition shown in the **navigation pane**.

To open a partition, use the standard navigation methods to traverse the repository tree to find the partition. You can open it either by selecting it and clicking the Open button, or by double-clicking the partition name.

Alternatively, you can type a level or partition name directly into the Level field, and then click Open or press ENTER. If the name specifies a repository level, then the repository tree will open to the selected level. If the name specifies a partition, then the partition will be opened immediately.

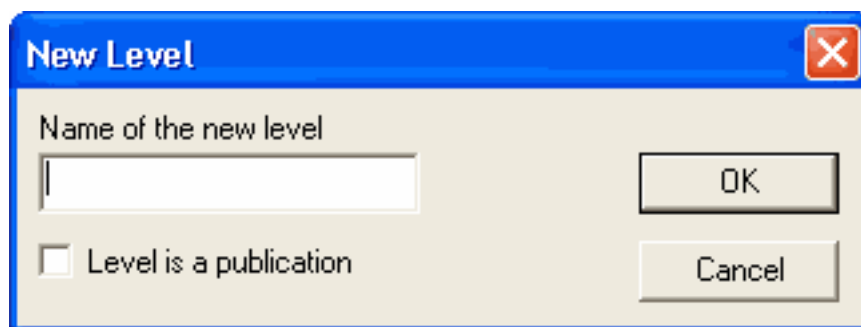
The Level field also lists the partitions that have been opened in the current TopLeaf session. To access a partition from the address bar list, click on the address bar dropdown, and select the partition. You can now edit the address bar selection, or click Open or press ENTER to open a partition.

Creating new levels

To create new levels select the item in the tree where the level is be added and press New, or right-click and select New Level.... To create a new publication at the top of the repository, select the repository root item.

Adding a level in a publication opens the **New Partition Dialog**.

Otherwise, the following dialog opens:



The level name must be entered and must conform to the constraints listed in [Section 4.3](#).

If the Level is a publication box is not checked, a folder level is created. If the box is checked, a publication level will be created and the New Partition Dialog will be opened to create the first partition in the publication.

Other operations

A number of partition specific operations can be accessed from the Open dialog. These operations are available by selecting a repository level, and right-clicking on the level name. The available commands are:

Copy To...

The Copy To... command creates a duplicate of the selected repository level or partition. Use the mouse to select the level that you want to duplicate, then right-click on the level name. Click Copy To.... Type in the name of the duplicate level or partition and press ENTER.

The name must conform to the constraints listed in [Section 4.3](#).

Delete

To delete a repository level or partition, use the mouse to select the level that you want to delete, then right-click on the level name. Click Delete. Exercise caution when deleting a repository level or partition. The deleted level or partition will be permanently removed from the repository and cannot be retrieved from the Recycle Bin.

Note:

Deleting all of the partitions from an existing publication does not delete the stylesheet information associated with the publication. The first partition subsequently added to an empty publication will automatically reference the existing publication stylesheets. You must delete the publication level if you intend to create a new set of stylesheets for an existing, empty publication.

Rename

To rename a repository level or partition, use the mouse to select the level that you want to rename, then right-click on the level name. Click Rename. Type the new level name and press ENTER.

The name must conform to the constraints listed in [Section 4.3](#).

Print

To print a repository partition without opening the partition, use the mouse to select the partition that you want to print, then right-click on the partition name. Click Print to either print all, or just the changed and included pages in the selected partition.

10.5.2 New Partition

This dialog opens when a new partition is being created in a publication.

New Partition in [UserGuide]

Enter a name for the partition. You may also provide an initial source document.

Name of the new partition
Template

Source document ☐ Copy to partition
C:\Temp\test.xml Browse

☐ DTD File ☐ Copy to publication
Browse

☐ Catalog File ☐ Copy to publication
Browse

< Back Next > Cancel Help

The partition name must be entered and must conform to the constraints listed in [Section 4.3](#). By convention, the recommended name for the first partition in a publication is **Template**. Some implementations use the partition with this name as a model for creating new partitions.

You may also provide an initial source document for the partition. Leave the field empty if no suitable document is available.

Fill in all the tabs then click the [Next](#) button to move to the next step.

Source document

If you tick the [Copy to partition](#) checkbox then TopLeaf will **copy** the source document into the partition. If this option remains unchecked, then TopLeaf will set up a **link** between the source document and the partition. If you set up a copy partition, make sure that the source document is self contained, as external documents or graphics referenced from the document will not be copied into the partition.

TopLeaf will check the source document file type when it creates the partition. If the source document file type is `.sgm`, then TopLeaf will assume that the initial partition markup type is SGML.

DTD File

A DTD is not required by TopLeaf, so it is recommended that you leave the [DTD File](#) checkbox blank.

When the option [Copy to publication](#) is unchecked, the system will operate via a link to the DTD, and any changes made externally will be honored when composing partitions within the publication. If you check this option, a private copy of the selected DTD file will be stored within the repository, and changes to the original file will have no effect on the publication.

Note:

You would normally only copy a DTD into a publication if the DTD file is self contained, or when you want to associate a publication with an independent version of the DTD.

When TopLeaf makes a copy of the DTD it only copies the file you specify. If the DTD includes other files via parameter entities, then the included files will not be copied. This can result in the DTD being incomplete, and cause errors when TopLeaf composes the partition.

In most cases, these errors relate to the resolution of relative paths declared within the DTD file, and can be addressed by copying the folders containing the DTD inclusions into the TopLeaf publication folder.

Catalog File

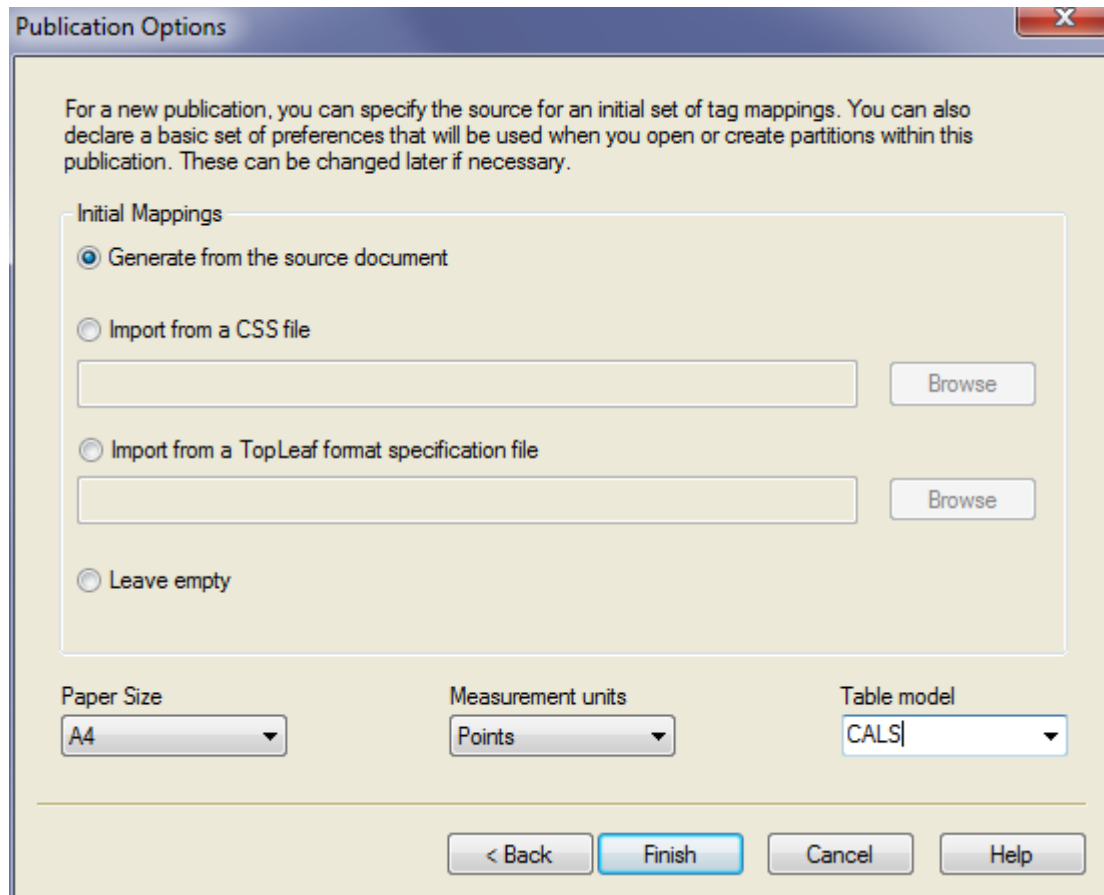
Entities within a [document type declaration](#) can be resolved using the OASIS catalog mechanism. The catalog will be ignored if no DTD is used.

If you uncheck Copy to publication, the system will operate via a link to the catalog, and any changes made externally will be honored when composing partitions within the publication. If you check this option, a private copy of the selected catalog file will be stored within the repository, and changes to the original file will have no effect on the publication.

TopLeaf's OASIS catalog support is limited. See [Section 11.2.14](#) for more information.

Publication Options

The Publication Options dialog sets up the basic preferences that will be used when you open or create partitions within a publication. These are only set when you create the first partition within a publication because the same tag mapping and page layout styles are shared by all partitions in that publication.



Tag mappings

The following are the options for creating an initial set of **mappings** for the stylesheet:

- **Generate the mappings from the source document** — TopLeaf analyses the XML source document and assigns provisional mappings for each tag based on its depth in the hierarchy, the tag position within the parent element, or the presence or absence of text content. This option is not available for SGML documents, or if no document was specified in the New Partition dialog.
- **Import from a CSS file** — TopLeaf can read a Cascading Style Sheet (CSS, see [Section 4.7.2](#)) and convert most of the format information into TopLeaf mappings. When you choose this option, you must use the selector to locate the relevant **.css** file.
- **Import from a TopLeaf format specification file** — If you already have a TopLeaf publication with the same or similar format, you can use that format to start off your new publication. Note that a copy is made, so you can modify the style without affecting the original publication. Use the selector to locate the **mappings.tlx** file located in the publication folder of the relevant publication. Note that you can only use a **mappings.tlx** file from a publication in a repository; if you select a file that is not in a publication the creation may fail to find other necessary files.
- **Leave empty** — generates only a basic **\$document** mapping to set default font, alignment etc, plus some default rules for paragraph splitting.

The initial mappings represent a starting point only. You can then fine tune the output format by refining these mappings and adding new mappings as required.

Paper Size

The paper size selector allows you to assign the preferred page size for this publication. In general you will normally select Letter within the USA and A4 anywhere else. The **Layout Editor** allows you to choose from a more extensive range of paper sizes (and to create your own custom sizes if necessary).

Table Model

TopLeaf supports the following table models:

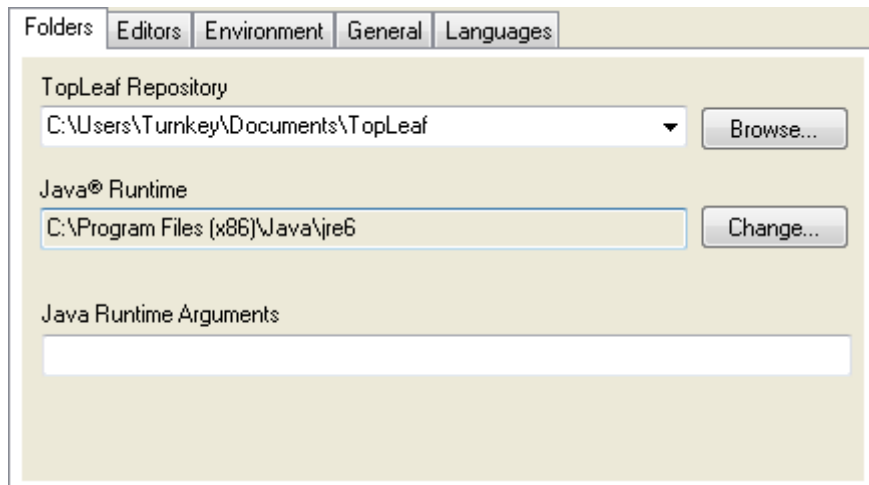
- a subset of the CALS table model as defined at <http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>
- a subset of the HTML table model as defined at <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/struct/tables.html>

If you do not know which table model to choose, then select Unknown.

10.5.3 Preferences

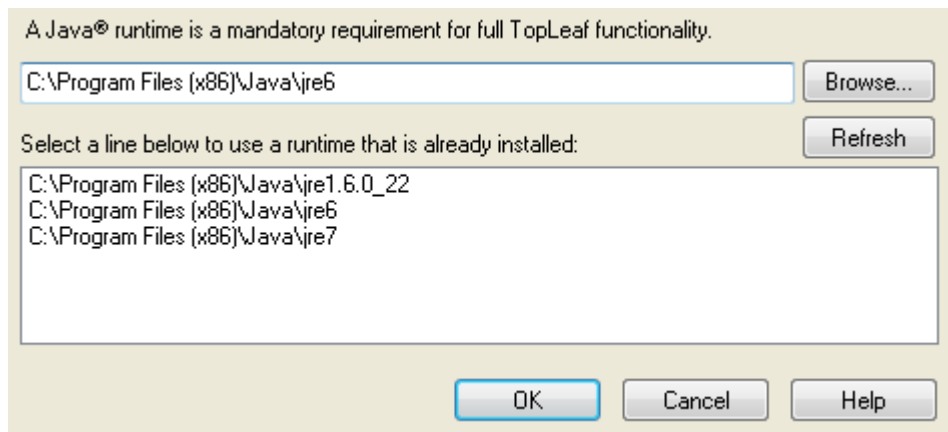
This dialog is invoked from the File menu to set TopLeaf general preferences.

The Folders *tab*



The location of the repository folder cannot be changed while a partition is open. Select File » Close to close the current partition.

The Java Runtime field displays the path to the Java runtime used by TopLeaf's Java components. Press the Change... button to open the Java runtime selection dialog.



TopLeaf searches for all suitable installed Java runtimes and displays them in a list. Click on an item from the list to select a runtime and press OK. Use the Refresh button to reload the list of runtime options (for example, after installing a new runtime).

If a Java runtime is installed but does not appear in the list, use the Browse... button to locate it. Be sure to select the folder into which you installed the runtime; some operations will not work correctly if you select the wrong folder. TopLeaf will only find runtimes of version 6 or later. Using an earlier version may give incorrect results.

This dialog also appears when TopLeaf first starts if no runtime has been selected. In this case, an extra checkbox with the legend Don't show this dialog again appears. Ticking this checkbox prevents the dialog from appearing the next time TopLeaf starts.

Note:

You must install and select a Java runtime in order to use TopLeaf.

On a 64-bit operating system only 32-bit runtimes will be displayed. If you select a runtime by using **Browse...** make sure it is a 32-bit runtime. Some components used by TopLeaf will not work correctly with a 64-bit runtime.

The TopLeaf API will use the value of the **JAVA_HOME** environment variable to locate the runtime if no runtime has been selected in the workstation.

The Java Runtime Arguments field can be used to pass arguments to the java virtual machine when TopLeaf runs a java program. See the documentation for the java runtime environment you are using for a list of the arguments you can set.

For example, a value of “-Xmx128m” sets the maximum heap size on a Windows system to 128 megabytes (the default maximum size is usually 64 megabytes).

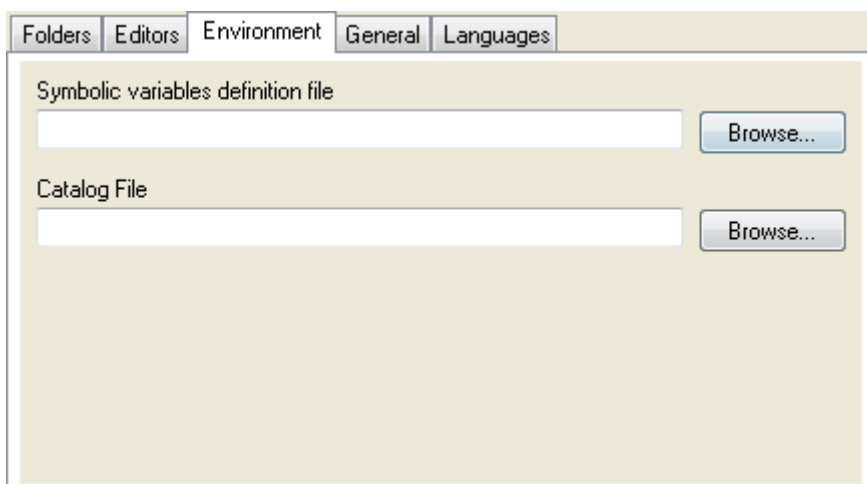
The **TLJAVA_ARGS** environment variable can also be used to pass arguments to the virtual machine.

The Editors tab



Sets the programs to use when editing files. The SGML/XML Documents editor is used when editing the partition document. The Other Files editor is used for all other files (for example, when inspecting the Composition Log).

The Environment *tab*



Symbolic variables definition file

This file path identifies the name of a text file that declares one or more **environment variables** that may be referenced from within the content of a mapping **customisation**. You can use environment variables to identify path names to external folders or files referenced from a tag mapping. Variable names are case sensitive and must not contain spaces.

TopLeaf symbolic variables are assigned using the following command:

```
SET variable=string
```

Within a tag mapping customisation, symbolic variables are referenced using the following syntax:

```
{$variable}
```

where ***variable*** is the name of a symbolic variable.

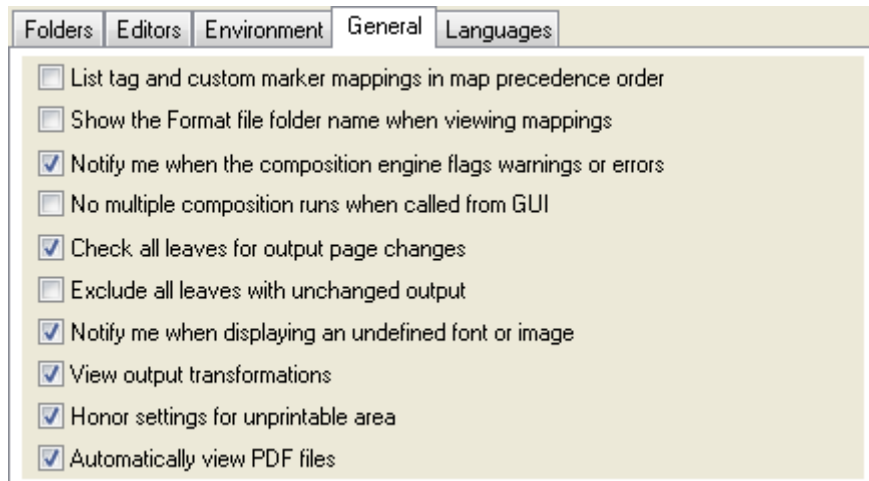
Note:

Scripts processed by the composition engine's Perl interpreter cannot reference variables declared within the variables definition file.

Catalog file

The *Catalog file* identifies the name of a default OASIS catalog file. If defined, TopLeaf will use this file when composing any XML partition that does not explicitly declare its own OASIS catalog file.

TopLeaf's OASIS catalog support is limited. See [Section 11.2.14](#) for more information.

The General tab

The settings in this tab control the state of the following global parameters:

- List tag and custom marker mappings in map precedence order — when applying a stylesheet rule, TopLeaf chooses the most appropriate mapping by applying a set of **precedence rules** and then selecting the mapping that has the highest precedence. By default, the **Map Manager** displays tag and custom marker mappings in alphabetical order. When this preference is checked, the map manager lists tag and custom marker mappings using map precedence order.

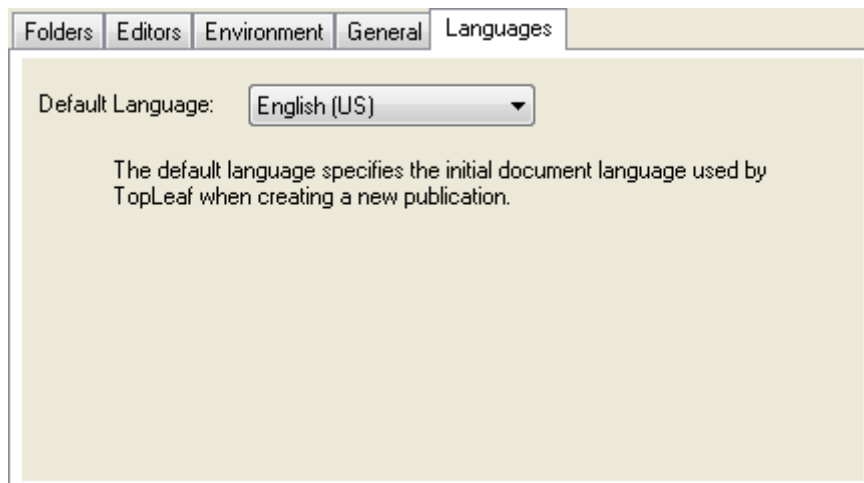
The option only applies to the legacy Map Manager.

- Show the Format file folder name when viewing mappings — if this is checked the title bar of a stylesheet dialog shows the folder containing the stylesheet component.
- Notify me when the composition engine flags warnings or errors — if this is checked, after a typesetting run with warnings and/or errors a dialog will appear asking if you wish to view the composition log.
- No multiple composition runs when called from GUI — if this is checked, the composition engine will only run once when called from the GUI, even if the stylesheet contains **<readgen/>** commands to create and read generated files. This does not affect the operation of the composition engine when called from the API.
- Check all leaves for output page changes — sets the default preference for applying output **page comparison** to a **full looseleaf** partition. The state of this option is assigned to the equivalent **partition property** when selecting a full looseleaf **page management** model. You can override this setting for individual partitions by setting or clearing the equivalent **partition property**.
- Exclude all leaves with unchanged output — sets the default preference for using output **page comparison** to minimise the size of a release update for a **full looseleaf** partition. The state of this option is assigned to the equivalent **partition property** when selecting a full looseleaf **page management** model. You can override this setting for individual partitions by setting or clearing the equivalent **partition property**.
- Notify me when displaying an undefined font or image — if this is checked, the previewer will issue a warning message when a font or image recorded in the output page description cannot be found. These warnings can occur if the output pages for a partition were created on one platform and viewed on another platform that has different fonts installed or assigns different network drive mappings.
- View output transformations — this is used as an initial default when converting to HTML or RTF.
- Honor settings for unprintable area — for some print devices, the dimensions of the physical page are larger than the dimensions of the logical page, so when you print to these

devices, you may find that your output is shifted slightly to the left or down from the top of the physical page. When this option is checked (the default), the print area of the page is offset by the unprintable area setting for the output print device. If not checked, you must ensure that your page margins are large enough to allow for the unprintable area.

- Automatically view PDF files — this is used to start the PDF reader after a PDF file is created (you must have a PDF reader installed and associated with the .pdf file type for this to work).

The Languages tab



This tab allows you to set your preferred default language.

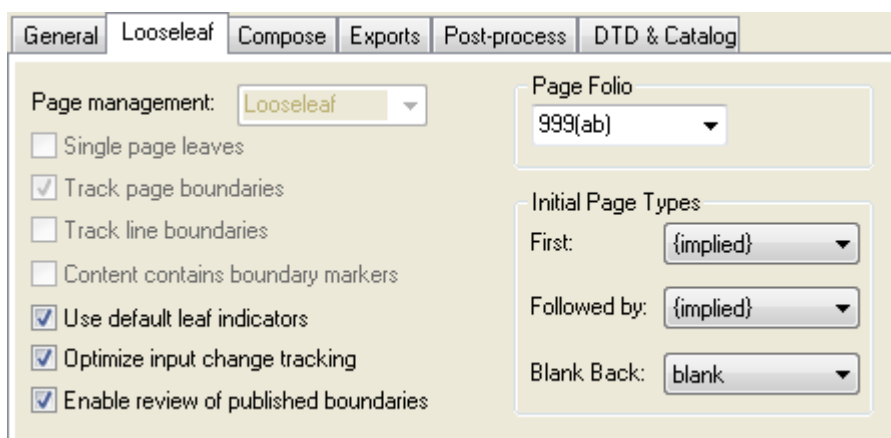
The default language is used to set the initial document language for a new publication. The document language for a publication can be changed in the **Options** dialog.

Note that unlike most other preferences, the default language may be applied for all users on this machine. On operating systems such as Windows 7 you will need to start TopLeaf with elevated privileges to change the setting for all users.

10.5.4 Partition Properties

Partition properties describe a set of characteristics that identify the partition content and indicate how TopLeaf will process that content. The Partition Properties dialog can be accessed from the File menu.

The Looseleaf tab



The option selected in the Page management drop-down defines the method used by TopLeaf to process changes to published pages. Use the default (**None**) if you only intend to distribute

complete publications rather than just the pages that have changed. See [Section 8.1.3](#) for a comparison of the **Full looseleaf** and **Change pages** modes.

The settings below are active only if [Looseleaf](#) page management is selected.

- [Single page leaves](#) — When the content is typeset, one page will be allocated to a leaf instead of two pages. Every leaf is composed as a right-hand page ignoring the traditional convention of right pages: odd numbers, left pages: even numbers.
- [Track page boundaries](#) — If this option is enabled, TopLeaf will track the position of each page boundary within the partition content. You can export a copy of the **published** document content that includes a set of page boundary markers identifying each page boundary.
- [Track line boundaries](#) — If this option is enabled, TopLeaf will track the position of each data block line boundary within the partition content. You can export a copy of the **published** document content that includes a set of line boundary markers identifying each line boundary.
- [Content contains boundary markers](#) — Indicates that the partition content contains TopLeaf **boundary marker** processing instructions.

If this option is enabled, then:

- the position of each document leaf boundary is identified within the content by a TopLeaf leaf boundary marker;
- boundary markers are always visible when the document content is edited;
- content **imported into the partition** using the TopLeaf API must contain leaf boundary markers.

This option *must* be enabled if you plan to initialize a looseleaf partition from a set of **existing leaf boundaries**.

If this option is disabled then:

- when the partition content is updated, TopLeaf automatically compares the updated content with the published content to locate the position of each published leaf boundary;
- boundary markers are not shown when the document content is edited, unless the option to **view the published boundaries** is selected before editing the content;
- you must set [Include boundary markers in document](#) to include leaf boundary markers when exporting the partition content to an external document file;
- tracked page and line boundary markers can only be included when exporting the **published** document content.

Warning:

Do not delete any of the published leaf boundary markers if your content contains explicitly declared leaf boundary markers. If you need to remove content containing boundary markers, move the markers out of the content before deleting it.

- [Use default leaf indicators](#) — If this option is enabled, TopLeaf will copy the partition default leaf indicators to each *new* leaf created in a release. In a mainwork, the default leaf indicators are assigned to all leaves. In an update, the default leaf indicators are assigned only to new leaves generated as a result of changes to the partition content. See [Section 10.4.6](#) for more details.
- [Optimize input change tracking](#) — If this option is enabled, TopLeaf composes the content of all adjacent changed or included leaves within the same leaf group or leaf section as a single unit. This usually minimises the total number of replacement pages in a release. If

you disable this option then each leaf will be composed independently and TopLeaf will create additional point pages for any leaf that overflows past the end of the last page associated with each leaf.

- Enable review of published boundaries — This option allows you to review, and if necessary, adjust the positions of published boundary markers without registering the alteration as a change to the document. A **boundary marker** defines the position of a published leaf, page or line ends within a document. Topleaf uses processing instructions to mark the position of these boundaries within the document content. At a minimum, enabling this option allows you to review the published leaf boundaries. If you intend to review the published page or line boundaries then you must also Enable page boundary markers and Enable line ending markers.

The Page Folio control specifies how folio strings are to be formatted in a **full looseleaf** partition. You can use the `<leaf-settings/>` to set the point page level separator character.

The Initial Page Types controls declares an initial set of page types when typesetting a **full looseleaf** partition. The following initial page types are defined:

- First — This defines the default page type applied when rendering the first page of the partition.
- Followed By — This defines the default page type used when rendering all non-blank pages after the first page.
- Blank Back — This defines the **intentionally blank** page type. This page type will be used when the content of a leaf fits entirely within the first page of that leaf.

Running heads, automatic table headings, margin rules (change bars), and deletion markers are disabled on the Blank Back page type. For example, if you assign the **1 column** page type as your Blank Back page type, then running heads and automatic table headings will be disabled on *all* pages that use that layout. For most publications, the Blank Back page type should be declared as either **{implied}** or **Blank**.

The initial First and Followed By page types can be overridden by a tag or custom marker **mapping**. In a full looseleaf update, you can also declare a set of initial page types as **properties** applied at the start of a leaf.


The Compose tab

The Compose tab declares a set of partition specific options for the TopLeaf composition engine.

The Document Markup Language selector shows **XML** or **SGML** as appropriate (the **Legacy** setting is provided for jobs created using older versions of TopLeaf). The document markup language can only be set when a partition is created. The option Ignore case in SGML tags is only enabled for SGML data. If set, the processing of all element and attribute names is case insensitive. For example, this means that TopLeaf will regard the tags `<title type="section">` and `<Title`

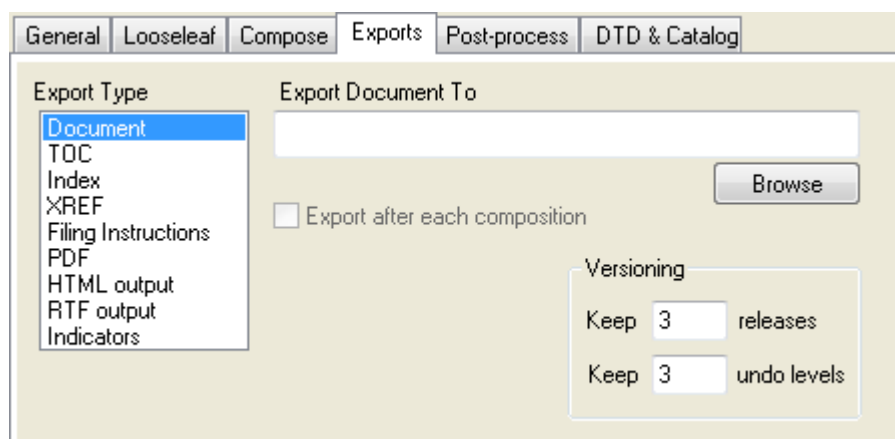
Type="section" > as identical. Setting this option automatically disables **full looseleaf** page management.

The following settings are available:

- Enable debug mode — if set, then details of the typesetting run are sent progressively to the log file. This setting can be changed at any time using the Debug button .
- Enable secondary transforms — if set, controls whether the composition engine creates data for the HTML and RTF transformations.
- Do not publish with composition warnings — if set, prevents a **looseleaf** partition from being **published** if the last composition run produced warning messages. If this option is not set a partition can be published with warnings, but not if it has errors.
- Check all pages for output changes — if set, TopLeaf compares the updated and published output for all leaves in the partition. If the output for a leaf has changed, then that leaf will be included in the update pack. Setting this option has the potential to *increase* the size of the update pack. This is only enabled for **full looseleaf** partitions.
- Exclude all leaves with unchanged output — if set, TopLeaf compares the updated and published output for those leaves in which the content of the leaf has changed or the leaf has been manually, conditionally or automatically included. If the output for the leaf is unchanged, then the leaf will be excluded from the update pack. Setting this option has the potential to *reduce* the size of the update pack. This option is only enabled for **full looseleaf** partitions.
- Only check for output changes when publishing — if set, then output page comparisons are deferred until the partition is published. This is useful when the partition must be composed a number of times, for example if there is an included table of contents built by the first composition pass and rendered by the second pass. This option is not enabled for **full looseleaf** partitions.
- Only check difference area for output changes — If set, output page comparisons are restricted to the differencing area defined by that style sheet. This option is only enabled when processing a **full looseleaf** partition and your publication style sheet uses a TopLeaf **legacy** page layout.
- Ignore output changes above content level — if set, will ignore output changes found in content tagged with a **suppression level** greater than the specified value.

The Exports tab

During a typesetting run, TopLeaf can generate a number of derived files for possible use in later processing.



This tab allows the user to specify where in the system each of these derived files is to be saved. Each file is specified separately, and only those files of interest need be set up. If Export after each

composition is ticked, the file is saved automatically at the end of every typesetting run. If not ticked, the files are only created *immediately before* the partition is **published**.

To export a file, select the export type and enter the name of the export file in the Export ... To: box or click the Browse button to navigate to an existing folder or target file.

If a simple file name is entered (one without any '/' or '\' characters) it will be stored in the partition folder. Otherwise, you should enter an absolute path for the file.

The files may also be saved manually via the File » Export dialog. The types of derived file are:

- **Document**

Copy the input data file to the specified file name. This may be useful in **full looseleaf** processing where the file may have markers inserted to show leaf, page or line boundary markers. You can use the **{document-file}** system variable to reference this file path from your stylesheet mappings. See **Chapter 8**.

- **TOC (Table of Contents)**

TOC entries mapped from the input file are assembled into an XML file of TOC references together with their corresponding output page folios.

- **Index**

Index entries mapped from the input file are assembled into an XML file of index references together with their corresponding output page folios.

- **XREF (Cross reference)**

This is similar to the Index output, but it can be used for metadata that is not hierarchical in form.

- **Filing Instructions**

TopLeaf creates a file with a record for every output page showing its page folio and status. The content of this file can be used for the automatic production of instructions for filing the new and replacement pages of a release.

- **PDF**

A PDF version of the partition is generated.

- **HTML Output**

An HTML rendition of the partition content is created using the publication stylesheet. The default transform properties for the partition are used (see **Section 7.4**). This option is only available if the Enable secondary transforms box is ticked on the Compose tab.

- **RTF Output**

A RTF (Rich Text Format) rendition of the partition content is created using the publication stylesheet. The default transform properties for the partition are used (see **Section 7.4**). This option is only available if the Enable secondary transforms box is ticked on the Compose tab.

- **Indicators**

A file is created that records all the indicators used in the partition. See **Section 10.4.6**.

Setting an export location which is independent of the repository location

Unlike the **post-processing** step, you cannot specify a relative file path for an exported file. However, the export file name can also include references to environment variables. If you need to specify an export target that is independent of the repository location, first declare the target folder or path in an environment variable, then include a reference to that environment variable within your export target path.

For example: the environment variable **WEBDATA** is declared as **F:\MYWEBDATA**.

To export an HTML rendition of the input partition to this folder, declare the HTML output path as:

\$WEBDATA/MyHTML.HTM

TopLeaf defines the environment variable **\$TLPPATH** which points to the current partition folder.

Versioning

These selectors control how many previous versions of the partition are retained. Increasing this number allows you to roll back further into the history of the partition, at the cost of increasing the storage required. You can choose to Keep the following:

- Releases — the maximum number of releases retained each time a new partition update release is created.

This is the number of releases *in addition to* the published release and the update release (if present).

The release immediately before the published release is always retained. This means that there are always at least 2 releases present, or 3 if there is an update release.

- Undo Levels — the maximum number of copies of the partition content retained within a release. When you edit the content of a partition from within the TopLeaf workstation, Toplevel creates a copy of the document immediately before opening the document editor. You can use the **undo** option to cancel the changes applied in a previous edit session.

The Post-process tab

TopLeaf can invoke a post-processing program (.EXE or .BAT) after the typesetting run has finished. Browse for the name of the program, and enter any required arguments in the box.

If the **Command** is either “java” or “javaw” (case-sensitive) the Java runtime specified in the **preferences dialog** will be used.

If the Launch after running the composition engine box is ticked, the post-processing will be run every time the partition is typeset, otherwise it will only be run *immediately before* the partition is **published**.

Tick the Run in a minimized window box if you want your post-processing to run in the background.

The DTD & Catalog tab

DTD File

The DTD file identifies a [Document Type Definition](#) associated with the partition. This can be useful if your XML documents do not contain a document type declaration or if the referenced DTD external subset cannot be resolved or is undefined. The DTD is always defined when the **first partition is created** within a publication. All other partitions inherit the **publication** DTD file.

Note that a DTD defined here will override any DTD specified in the DOCTYPE directive of the source document.

Catalog File

Entities within a [document type declaration](#) can be resolved using the OASIS catalog mechanism.

TopLeaf's OASIS catalog support is limited. See [Section 11.2.14](#) for more information.

10.5.5 Format Options

The [Options](#) dialog lets you set various options that affect the formatting of the current publication.

From this dialog you can set:

- The document **table model**;
- The document **hyphenation method**;
- The document **language**;
- The displayed **measurement units** used within stylesheet editors;
- General style sheet **preferences**.

Table model

TopLeaf supports the following table models:

- a subset of the CALS table model as defined at <http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>
- a subset of the HTML table model as defined at <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/struct/tables.html>

If you do not know which table model to choose, then select Unknown.

Rule Weight

This value sets the default rule weight used for **margin rules** and **horizontal rules** that appear above or below mapped element content.

Measurement units

Although TopLeaf's internal unit of measure is the *decipoint*, a number of different measurement units can be used to display the values shown in the stylesheet editors. The following list describes the available units:

- One **Inch** = 720dp (**1.5in** is stored internally as **1080** decipoints).
- One **Centimeter** = 283.5dp (**4.5cm** is stored as **1276** decipoints).
- One **Millimeter** = 28.35dp (**45mm** is stored as **1276** decipoints).
- One **Point** = 10dp (**65.2pt** is stored as **652** decipoints).
- **Decipoints** (TopLeaf's internal measure) are stored directly (**15dp** is stored as **15** decipoints).

Note:

You can use centimeters, millimeters, or picas to specify and display the values shown in the stylesheet editors. TopLeaf automatically converts all values to decipoints, and this may result in a slight loss of accuracy. Choose points or decipoints if you need to use the full accuracy of the program.

Document language

The document language can influence the hyphenation rules used by TopLeaf when processing content within a document. An embedded Dashes™ hyphenation module provides **Language specific hyphenation** support for most European languages. The document language declares the implied initial setting for the document, and is overridden by any language set by the `xml:lang` attribute or through the `<text-properties lang="LA" />` directive. In the case where the content of a partition is sourced from a multi-document **book list**, the document language declares the implied language for each document in the book list.

Hyphenation method

The hyphenation method specifies the action TopLeaf can take when it tries to split a word that would otherwise extend beyond the right margin of a data or fixed block.

TopLeaf provides three types of hyphenation:

- **soft** — TopLeaf splits a word if a soft hyphen (Unicode code point **U+00AD**) appears *within* a word;
- **Use hyphenation dictionary** — TopLeaf looks up a hyphenation exception list or dictionary for the current language;
- **Use language hyphenation rules** — TopLeaf splits words according to a set of rules appropriate to the current language.

Hyphenation precedence rules

When TopLeaf determines that it is permitted to hyphenate a word, it applies the following precedence rules to determine the hyphenation break points:

1. Use embedded soft hyphens (Unicode code point **U+00AD**) within the word;
2. If dictionary hyphenation is enabled, check the **hyphenation exception dictionary**;
3. If rule-based hyphenation is enabled, apply a set of language specific hyphenation rules.

Note:

The first precedence rule that is satisfied determines the hyphenation break points. A word will only be hyphenated if one or more hyphenation methods are enabled, and when permitted by the **hyphenation mode** declared for the context of a mapping.

By default, TopLeaf will not attempt to hyphenate any word of five characters or less.

General preferences

The following preferences can be set:

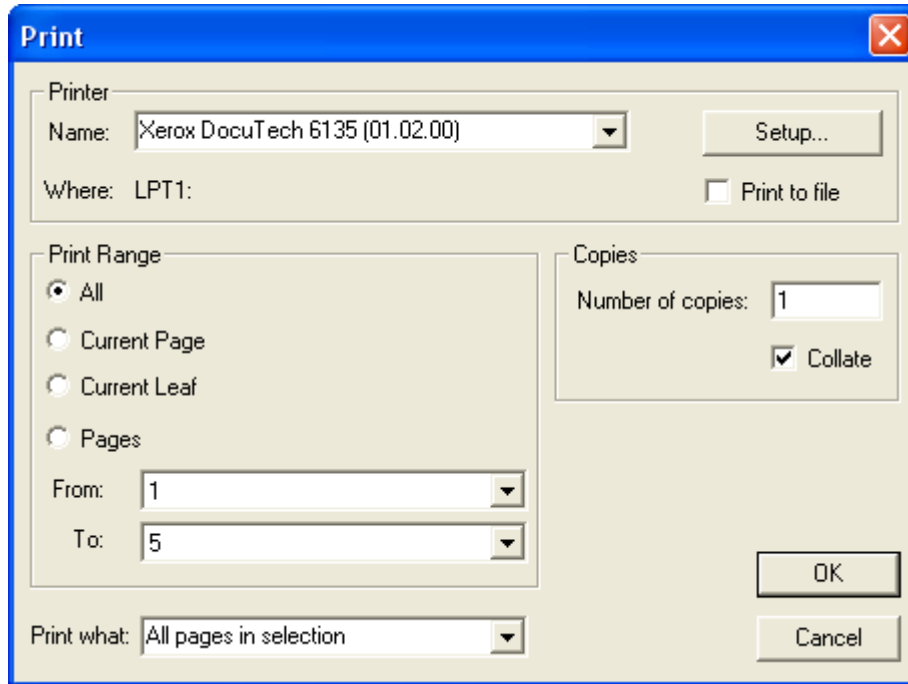
- **Balance columns.** If set, then TopLeaf attempts to minimize the depth of the rendered content by allocating an **equal amount of content to each column**. If this option is not set, then content flows into the next column only when the previous column is full. You can use the `<topleaf-properties/>` and `<segment-properties/>` directives to override this setting.
- **Read-Only Format Files.** This provides a simple way to prevent unintentional changes to the publication mapping rules and layout specifications. When enabled, the stylesheet editors will open in read-only mode, permitting a review of the current settings, but inhibiting changes to those settings.
- **Legacy Font Compatibility.** When enabled, this will generate mapping rules and layout specifications that can be processed by the TopLeaf 7.0 legacy **PDFlib PDF builder**.
- **Honor settings for unprintable area.** This option is only enabled when processing TopLeaf **legacy** publications.

10.5.6 Print

Select File » Print ... to print one or more pages from the selected partition phase.

From here, you can select a print device and print:

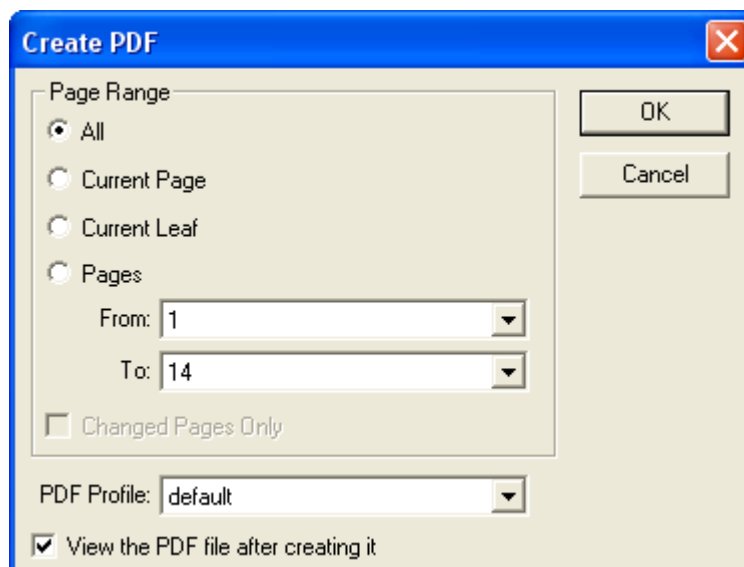
- all the pages in the partition;
- the currently selected page;
- a right/left page leaf that containing the currently selected page;
- a page *range* specified by a start and end page.

**Warning:**

The printed output is the same as that displayed in the **preview pane**, and may not correspond exactly to the stylesheet format. For production output it is recommended that you create a **PDF rendition**.

10.5.7 Create PDF

Select **File » Create PDF ...** dialog to create a PDF document for one or more pages from the currently selected partition phase.



From here, you can create a PDF of:

- all the pages in the partition;
- the currently selected page;
- a right/left page leaf that containing the currently selected page;
- a page *range* specified by a start and end page.

The PDF Profile drop-down list allows you to select the **profile** used to select the options for creating the PDF.

If the View the PDF file after creating it checkbox is ticked, the PDF viewer is launched after the file is created. For this to work a suitable application must be installed and associated with the file extension used when creating the PDF.

For a **looseleaf** partition you can use the Changed Pages Only option to only include the pages that are different from the previous release.

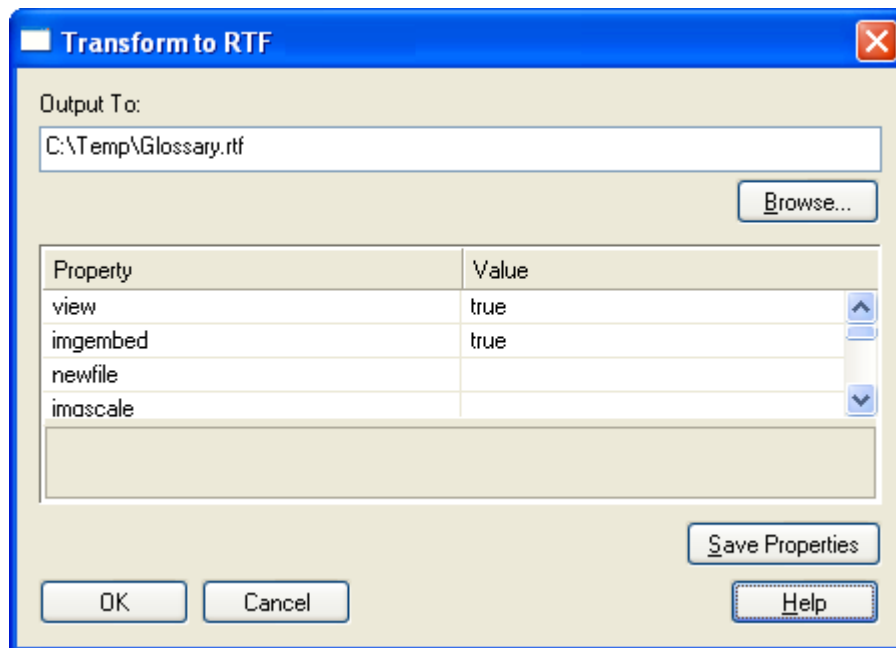
Note:

The following are disabled if you select a page range other than All, or if you select Changed Pages Only:

- **Hyperlinks** in the PDF are disabled because they are based on page number, which could become incorrect if some pages are omitted.
- **Bookmarks** are disabled because omitting items can cause the hierarchy to become incorrect. A **metadata variable** can be used to enable bookmarks in this case.

10.5.8 Transform

To run one of the **secondary transformations** choose one of the options on the File » Transform To menu, or press one of the transform buttons on the **standard toolbar**. The following dialog will appear.



The text in the title bar will show the type of transform to be performed.

Enter the path for the output file, or use the Browse... button to select a location.

The table allows you to set values for some of the **transform properties**. The properties displayed depend on the type of transform.

The **view** property is common to several transform types. If set to **true** TopLeaf will attempt to start an application to view the transformation output. This depends on an application being associated with the file extension. Consult the documentation for your operating system for information on how to achieve this.

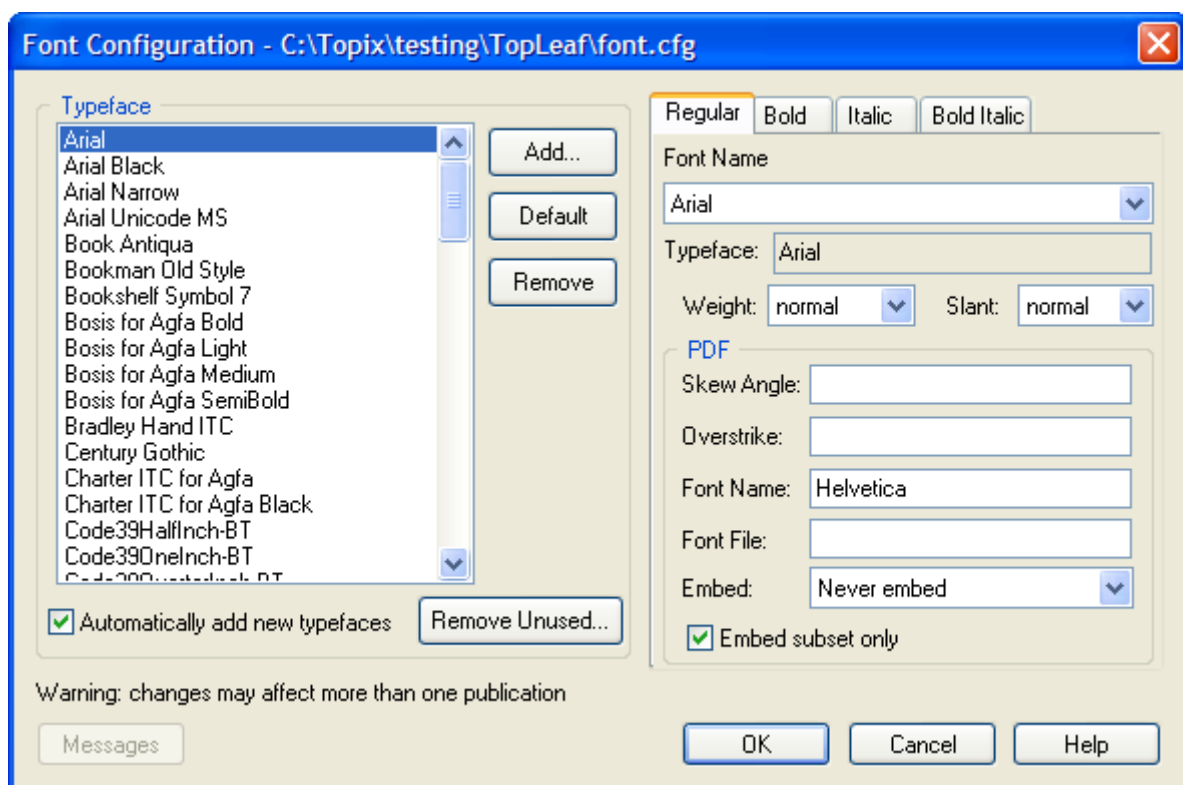
Note:

Property values must be entered using 7-bit (ASCII) characters. To express characters outside of this range use character references. For example, the copyright character (U+00A9) can be entered as **©**; You can use **&**; to include an ampersand character.

Press the **Save Properties** button to save the property values so they will be used as the defaults when the dialog is next used. The output path is also saved. This information is saved in a file called **transprop.xml** in the partition folder.

10.5.9 Font Configuration

To modify the font configuration file, select **Font Configuration ...** from the **Format** menu. The following dialog will appear.



The list on the left shows all of the typefaces that can be selected by mappings, either directly by entering them in the **Font tab** or indirectly by including them in a **selection scheme**. By removing an item from this list you make the typeface unavailable to TopLeaf even though the fonts in the typeface are still installed.

The warning message at the bottom of the dialog appears when you are editing the font configuration for the whole repository. This is a reminder that the changes you make apply to *all* publications.

If any problem occurred when locating the fonts on your system, the **Messages** button will be enabled. Click it to display the messages.

Select a typeface from the list to display the relevant details for each of the four styles in the right-hand pane.

Typeface styles

The Font Name drop-down list allows you to select one of the installed fonts. Changing this also sets the **Typeface**, **Weight** and **Slant** fields below to values that will cause TopLeaf to select this

font. Before changing the Weight or Slant fields, make sure you understand how Windows applications select fonts based on typeface and style. Consult the relevant Microsoft documentation for more information. If in doubt, use the font drop-down to set them.

The most common reason for changing the weight and/or slant fields is when you want to simulate an effect for which there is no equivalent font. For example, if you have a typeface called “X” which provides only an upright normal-weight font, you can set the weight to bold in order to simulate the “X Bold” font.

The remaining fields in the right-hand pane control how fonts are used when creating a PDF.

The Skew Angle and Overstrike values are used for simulating italic and bold effects, respectively. These are normally only used if no physical font with the desired characteristic is available. The skew angle specifies a clockwise angle from the vertical used to distort the characters. A value between 10 and 20 gives a good result for most fonts. The overstrike value is a horizontal distance (in points) at which the characters are repeated to make them appear thicker. Acceptable results are usually achieved with very small values.

If the Font Name field in the PDF box has a value, this overrides the use of the Windows font. This is set automatically for the PDF core fonts **Times**, **Helvetica** and **Courier**. Clearing this field for these typefaces will force the use of the Windows font, rather than using the font built into the PDF viewer.

Warning:

In order to get the most accurate rendering, the font used when typesetting must have the same character metrics as the font used to render in the PDF. Take care to ensure this is true when changing the PDF Font Name field.

The Font File field is normally left blank. There is a bug in Windows which can prevent a font from being found if its name is longer than 31 characters. If this happens, you can enter the font file here so that the PDF builder can locate it. Note that this must be the full path to the file (for example, **C:\Windows\Fonts\VARIALBD.TTF**).

The Embed value controls whether the font is stored in the resulting PDF. Embedding a font guarantees portability because the font doesn't need to be installed when the PDF is viewed. Embedding will increase the size of the PDF. Note that the licences of some fonts do not allow embedding. A value of **Default embedding** means that embedding is controlled by the options in force when the PDF is created. Select **Never embed** to prevent the font from being embedded; this is an appropriate selection for the core fonts mentioned above. Select **Always embed** to force embedding; this would be appropriate for a custom or proprietary font that won't otherwise be available when the PDF is viewed.

The Embed subset only check box controls what happens when the font is embedded. If it is selected, only those characters actually used (a **subset** of the font) will be included in the PDF. If it is not selected the whole font will be included.

Warning:

Font subset creation is not supported for some fonts that use CFF (compact font format) outlines. When a font using CFF outlines is added to the font configuration, the subset option is turned off by default. It is recommended that you do not enable subset creation for these fonts to avoid data loss.

Font embedding can also be controlled by using a [PDF profile](#).

Managing typefaces

If the Automatically add new typefaces box is checked, the installed typefaces are checked each time the font configuration is used. Any new typefaces which have been installed are automatically

added to the list. Uncheck this option if your repository is located on a shared drive so that you can control when new typefaces are added.

To manually add typefaces to the list, press the **Add...** button. A dialog will appear showing the installed typefaces that are not in the current configuration. The add dialog can be empty if all of the installed typefaces are present in the configuration. Multiple typefaces can be selected for addition.

By default, the list only includes typefaces that have a character set which is compatible with Unicode. Tick the **Include non-unicode typefaces** checkbox to include typefaces that have their own private character set (for example, Symbol and Wingdings). See [below](#) for more information.

The **Default** button resets the styles of the selected typeface to their original values (as if created by the automatic font configuration builder).

The **Remove** button deletes the selected typeface from the list.

The **Remove Unused...** button examines all of the publications in the repository to determine which typefaces are being used. This includes typefaces referred to by a [selection scheme](#) or a [character map](#). If there are any typefaces that are not referred to, a dialog is opened to display them. Select the check mark next to any typefaces you wish to remove and press **OK**.

Non-Unicode typefaces

Since XML data always uses the Unicode character set, in most cases you will only use typefaces that employ the Unicode, ASCII or Latin-1 character sets (these character sets are all compatible).

Some typefaces use a non-standard character set that contains graphic or decorative symbols rather than letters, numbers and punctuation. In Windows terminology, these are the typefaces that use a “symbol” character set.

As an example of using a non-Unicode font, let’s say you want to include an envelope symbol before a piece of text. A suitable symbol is available in the Wingdings font at character position 42. This could be done by creating a [custom marker](#) “WD” that selects the Wingdings font, and adding the following to the appropriate mapping customisation:

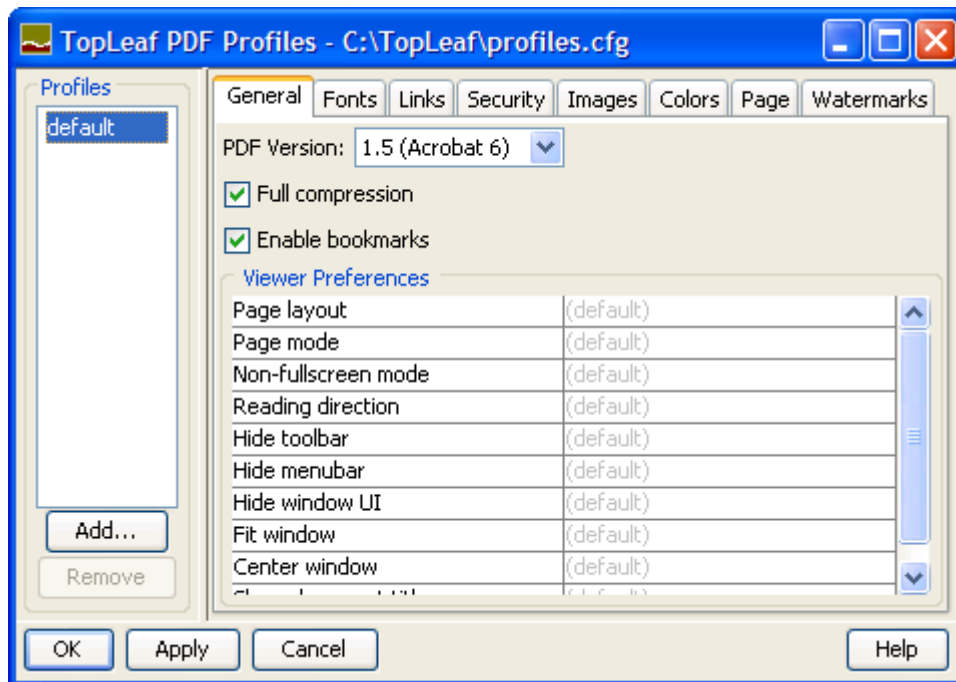
```
<WD>&#42;</WD>
```

TopLeaf does not distinguish between Unicode and non-Unicode typefaces, so you must take care to select a typeface appropriate for the context in which it is used.

10.5.10 PDF Profiles

A PDF profile contains information used when creating a PDF. See [Chapter 5](#) for information about PDF creation.

To examine, modify or create profiles, select the **File » PDF Profiles...** menu item to open the profile editor.



PDF profiles are stored in the TopLeaf **repository**. The title bar of the editor shows you the path to the file containing the profiles.

If you select a different repository in the **Preferences** dialog you must close and reopen the profile editor to see the profiles for the new repository.

TopLeaf provides a standard PDF profile. When the profile editor is opened for the first time in a repository, it will show the standard profile. At this point, the file containing the profiles does not exist in the repository (even though its path appears in the title bar of the editor). The file is not created until you make a change and press **OK**.

To create a new profile, press the **Add...** button and enter a name which is different from any of the existing profiles. A profile name may contain letters, digits and the characters '-', '_' and '.'. To remove a profile, select it from the list and press **Remove**. The profile called **default** may not be removed — this ensures that at least one profile is always available.

To close the profile editor, press **OK** to save your changes, or **Cancel** to discard them. Press **Apply** to save changes without closing the editor.

A profile is defined by the information on the tabs described below.

The General tab

The **PDF Version** allows you to set the level of the PDF standard used.

The **Full compression** checkbox causes some of the metadata to be stored in a compressed format (the page content is always compressed), resulting in smaller files. This option is only available for version 1.5 or later.

If the **Enable bookmarks** checkbox is not ticked the PDF will not contain bookmarks. This does not affect the **table of contents** extraction.

The **Viewer Preferences** fields allow you to set information that tells a viewing application how to display the PDF. See **Section 5.5** for a description of the available preferences.

The Fonts tab

The options on this tab relate to **font embedding**. Select one of the following embedding options:

- **Never** means that no fonts will be embedded in the PDF.

- Default to not embed means that, in general, fonts will not be embedded in the PDF. The only exceptions are fonts that have Always embed selected in their **font configuration** entry.
- Default to embed means that, in general, all fonts will be embedded in the PDF. The only exceptions are fonts that have Never embed selected in their **font configuration** entry.
- Always means that all fonts will be embedded, even the core PDF fonts. See **Section 5.2** for more information.

You may also select the way TopLeaf behaves when a font cannot be embedded:

- Ignore means that a failure to embed a font is not reported in any way.
- Warn and continue means that all embedding failures are reported in a log file, but the PDF is created. A PDF with font embedding failures can only be viewed or printed successfully if the fonts are available on the computer on which the PDF is being viewed.
- Do not create PDF means that any failure to embed a font is fatal and that the PDF will not be created. A log file listing the embedding errors will be produced.

The Links tab

This tab controls the creation of hyperlinks in the PDF.

If the Enable links checkbox is not ticked the PDF will not contain any hyperlinks. This does not affect formatting applied by mappings that create hyperlinks (in other words, the text of the link will appear the same, but the link will not be active).

A hyperlink which does not have a destination is sometimes referred to as a broken link. When TopLeaf fails to find the destination for a link, it does not activate the link in the PDF. This means that nothing will happen if the user clicks on the corresponding text or image. In fact, there is no indication to the user that this is a broken link, unless a specific format has been applied to the text of links.

One of the following actions can be selected for links with no destination:

- Ignore means that broken links are simply ignored.
- Warn and continue means that all broken links will be reported in a log file, but the PDF will be created.
- Do not create PDF means that any broken link will be regarded as a fatal error and prevent the PDF from being created. A log file listing the broken links will be produced.

Check the Annotate bad links with comments box to produce a PDF comment for each bad link that contains the target identifier that could not be found. This can be very useful when trying to determine why the target could not be found. This is only relevant when the “Warn and continue” option above is selected, since the other options do not result in a PDF with broken links.

The Security tab

This allows you to restrict what end users can do with the PDF.

TopLeaf supports 128-bit password encryption. In order to enable security controls, a master password must be supplied. See **Section 5.6** for more information about security settings.

Note:

The security provided by these options is relatively weak, and is not intended to be a substitute for a full Digital Rights Management or strong encryption solution.

In particular, these options rely on the PDF viewing application honoring the security settings. While the Adobe Reader® application operates according to the PDF standard, there is no guarantee that other PDF readers will do the same.

Content Suppression

You can assign a **content level** to content in a document by using the `<content-properties/>` command in your mappings. The content suppression options can then be used to prevent content with a content level greater than a given value from appearing in the PDF.

Set the Content level value to enable content suppression. All text and graphics with a security level greater than this will be excluded from the generated PDF. The default value of “9” indicates that no content is to be excluded.

You can set the Replacement graphic field to the full path of a graphic to use in place of any graphic that is excluded from the PDF. The graphic will take up the same space as the excluded graphic. If it is larger than the excluded graphic it will be scaled to fit and centered in the space available. If it is smaller, it will appear at its natural size, centered in the available space. If the excluded graphic is rotated, the same rotation will be applied to the replacement graphic.

Note:

Content exclusion is only applied to text and graphics. Other output (for example horizontal rules) is not affected.

The Images tab

This allows you to create a number of **image filters** that are used to transform images before incorporating them into the PDF.

The top list shows the filters that apply when the current profile is being used. The bottom list shows the filters that apply to all profiles.

When an image is processed TopLeaf looks for a filter with a matching type. The profile filters are checked first, followed by the global filters. The first matching filter is used. If no matching filter is found the image is processed normally.

To create a filter press Add... and enter the following details:

- The Name can be used to describe the purpose of the filter.
- The Input is the type of image to be processed.
- The Output is the output format created by the filter. This may be the same as the input format.
- The Working directory is the path to the directory in which the command is run. This may be blank.
- The Command contains the command to be executed. Each line is passed as a separate argument. The first line must be the path to the command executable. The strings **{input}** and **{output}** must be present and are replaced by the paths to the input and output files.

For example, the following filter uses the [ImageMagick](#) software to change the resolution of PNG images (the ImageMagick application must be downloaded and installed separately).

Name:

Input:

Output:

Working directory:

Command: `C:\Program Files\ImageMagick\convert
-resample
30x30
{input}
{output}`

The Colors tab

This allows you to select how colors are processed when creating the PDF.

Select the desired item from the Color model drop-down. The default value (**rgb**) uses the colors specified in TopLeaf as device-dependent RGB colors. If a **color palette** exists for the stylesheet, the RGB values defined in it will be used instead.

The **cmymk** model uses the **color palette** to find a CMYK equivalent for each color. A warning will be given if there is no palette or if a color has no CMYK value defined.

Note:

Selecting the **cmymk** color model does not have any effect on graphics. It is only used for converting colors selected in the mappings.

The **grayscale** model can be used to create a PDF that only contains black, white and shades of gray. If the stylesheet has a **color palette** the grayscale value defined for the color (if any) is used. Otherwise a **map** is used to specify how each color is converted.

Select Convert images to grayscale to convert all images to grayscale form. Note that this will cause vector images to be converted into a bitmap format.

Warning:

The default grayscale image conversion may cause a decrease in quality and remove transparency information. If the result is unacceptable you can use an image filter to apply a different conversion.

Tick the Use default map box to use a map that gives good results under most circumstances. You can also enter relative weights for each of the red, green and blue components in the color — a greater weight results in a lighter shade of gray for that component.

Note:

The grayscale map is not used for converting graphics — these are converted by calculating a standard luminance value for each pixel.

The **separation** model uses the spot color definitions in the **color palette** if they are defined. Otherwise it will try to use CMYK colors. If neither of these are found, or if there is no color palette, RGB colors will be used.

The Page tab

This tab allows you to set page boundaries using the page size, the **print area** and the **crop area**.

For each of the boundary boxes select one of the page areas to define it, or select Undefined. You can also apply offsets to the selected area by entering an offset definition in the following field (see **below** for a description of how to specify offsets).

Note:

To get correct results, make sure all page types used on a page define the same print and crop areas.

Offset definition

An offset definition consists of one, two or four measurements separated by spaces. Each measurement is a number optionally followed by a unit of measure. Both positive and negative values are allowed. If no unit is given, points are assumed. Valid units are “pt” (points), “cm” (centimeters), “mm” (millimeters), “pc” (picas) and “in” (inches).

The interpretation of the measurements is as follows:

- A single measurement is applied to all four sides.
- If two measurements are present, the first is applied to the top and bottom and the second is applied to the left and right sides.
- Four measurements are interpreted as top, left, bottom and right offsets.

In all cases, a positive measurement has the effect of increasing the size of the area, and a negative value decreases it. For example, a positive value for the top offset moves the top edge up, while a positive bottom offset moves the bottom edge down.

The Watermarks tab

This allows you to control whether one or more **watermarks** are applied to each page when this profile is selected.

The list on the left shows all of the available watermarks. Click on a watermark to display a preview in the right-hand pane. The checkbox next to a watermark shows whether it is applied by this profile.

To create a new watermark, press the **Add...** button and fill in the details. To change a watermark, select it and press **Edit...** or double-click it.

A watermark may not be removed if it is applied by any profiles. To remove a watermark, uncheck its name for all of the profiles, then select it and press **Remove**.

The following options in the Edit Watermark dialog control the appearance of the watermark. All measurements are a number of points.

Select Over content to draw the watermark on top of the page content, or Under content to draw it underneath.

The Horizontal alignment determines the position of the watermark when it is smaller than the available space on the page. When it is wider than the available space, it is scaled down to fit.

The Horizontal padding determines the amount of space reserved on the left and right sides of the page. Increasing this space decreases the space available for the watermark.

The Vertical alignment and Vertical padding have the same meanings as the above, but in the vertical direction.

The Rotation is expressed as a number of degrees in the counter-clockwise direction.

The Pages field allows you to select the pages on which the watermark will appear. See [below](#) for more information.

The Opacity is a measure between 0 (fully transparent) and 1 (fully opaque). If the watermark is drawn above the page content, it determines to what extent the content is obscured by the watermark.

The Blending mode determines how a watermark drawn above the content combines with the content. An appropriate blending mode allows you to have an opaque watermark without obscuring the content beneath it. See the *PDF Reference* for more information about blending modes.

Text Details

The Text, Font and Size fields determine the text to be displayed. If a line of text starts with the string “META:” the remainder of the line is used to locate a [metadata variable](#) with that name. If found, the line is replaced by the metadata value; if not found, the line will become empty.

The Line space determines the extra vertical space between each line of text.

The Color specifies the color used to draw the text. It is either a color name or a string of the form **#RRGGBB**, where each of the red, green and blue values are 2 hexadecimal digits.

The Outline width is the width of the line used to draw the outlines of the characters; if this is zero the characters are filled.

Image Details

For an image watermark you must specify the absolute path to the file containing the image. The Browse button opens a file selection dialog to help you locate the file.

Watermark Page Selection

The page selection for a watermark determines on which pages the watermark will appear. The selection is based on page number, where the first page in the PDF has number “1”.

The possible values are:

- A blank string means that the watermark will appear on all pages.
- The string “odd” means that the watermark will only appear on odd-numbered pages.
- The string “even” means that the watermark will only appear on even-numbered pages.
- A single number means that the watermark will appear on that page number only.
- Two numbers separated by “-” means that the watermark appears on the corresponding inclusive range.
- A number followed by “+” means that the watermark appears on that page and all following pages.

Note:

The watermark page selection uses the page number of the PDF being created; it does not use page numbers assigned by the mappings.

This is particularly important if you are creating a PDF from a part of a document. The page selection always treats the first page in the PDF as page number one, even if it is not the first page of the document.

10.5.11 Color Palette

Colors are specified in mappings as RGB (Red, Green, Blue) values. These are used to create device-dependent RGB colors when creating a PDF.

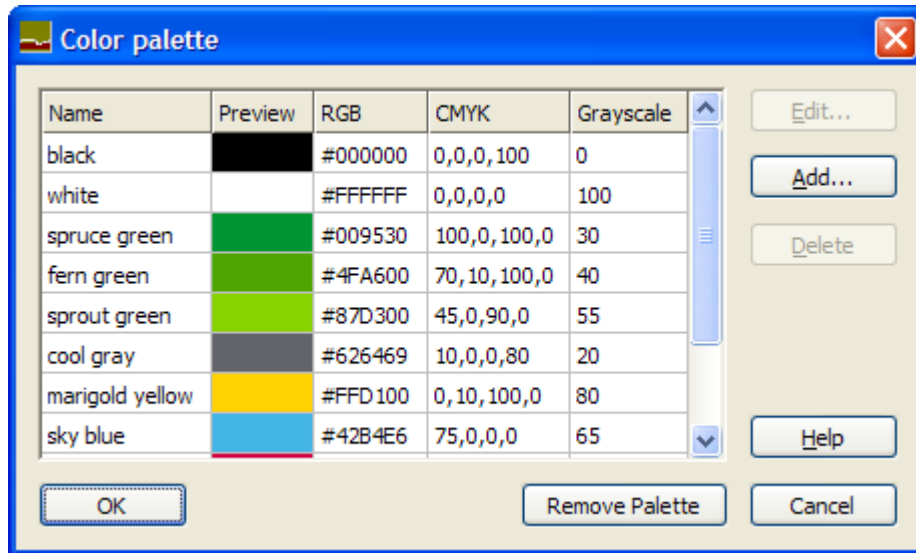
You can create a **color palette** for a stylesheet. This allows you to see all of the colors used in the stylesheet and assign properties to each one. For example, this allows you to specify CMYK (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black) values to be used if the [PDF profile](#) selected uses the **cmyk** color space.

To create a color palette select Color Palette... from the Format menu. An initial palette will be created from the colors used in the current mappings.

Note:

The initial palette will not include colors used in commands in the **custom content** of a mapping.

The palette editor dialog will be opened:



To add a new color to the palette, press Add... and enter a color. This is the **preview color** for the palette color, and will be used in the page preview and print output. A default name will be assigned to the color. You can change the name and the other color properties by selecting it and pressing Edit..., or by double-clicking it.

The color properties are:

- Name** Any name may be used for the color, as long as it is different from all of the other color names.
- RGB** The RGB value is used for PDF colors when the **profile** selects the **rgb** color space. It defaults to the same value as the preview color.
Each of the red, green and blue values must be in the range 0 to 255 inclusive (00 to FF hexadecimal). You can enter 3 decimal values separated by spaces or commas, or a hexadecimal value in the form “#RRGGBB”. For example, “0 128 255” and “#0080FF” are equivalent.
- CMYK** The CMYK value is used for PDF colors when the **profile** selects the **cmymk** color space.
Each of the cyan, magenta, yellow and black values must be in the range 0 to 100 inclusive. Enter them as decimal values separated by spaces or commas.
The color displayed is only an approximation of the actual CMYK value that will be used in the PDF.
- Grayscale** The grayscale value is used for PDF colors when the **profile** selects the **grayscale** color space.
The value must be entered as a decimal number in the range 0 (black) to 100 (white) inclusive.
- Spot** This is used when the **profile** selects the **separation** color space.

The value must be a name, optionally followed by a tint value, optionally followed by an alternate color specification. Use a comma to separate these. The tint must be in the range 0 to 100 and defaults to 100. The alternate color must be a hexadecimal RGB specification in the form “#RRGGBB”. For example:

Meadow Green, 80, #008040

The alternate color should correspond to the appearance with a tint value of 100 (so all spot colors with the same name should have the same alternate color).

To delete a palette color, select it and press **Delete**. A color may only be deleted if it is not used in any mappings.

Using the color palette

When a color palette exists for the stylesheet, pressing a **Set Color...** button will open the palette editor dialog. Select one of the colors and press **OK** to set the color. You can also add new colors or edit existing ones.

When using colors in command directives declared within a mapping customisation, use an RGB value that corresponds to a preview color in one of the palette colors.

Removing a color palette

You can remove the color palette from the stylesheet by pressing the **Remove Palette** button. This is only visible when you open the dialog from the **Format** menu, not when you are selecting a color in a mapping.

If you remove the palette the names and properties of the palette colors will be lost.

10.5.12 Page Properties

The Page properties dialog displays a set of characteristics associated with the active page from a non-looseleaf or **change pages** publication.

Details

Page (Front): aag-srv1.3
Update: Original Document
Revisions: 0
Filename: 0003

Input

☐ Changed
☐ Renumbered
☐ Required inclusion
☐ Include
☐ Include unchanged output
☐ Leaf group

Output

☐ Changed
☐ Added or replaced
☐ Derived change
☐ Jump change
☐ Suppress link line

Initial Page Types

Front: {implied} Followed by: {implied} Blank Back: {implied}

Indicators

Type	Indicator

OK

Cancel

These characteristics include:

- General information, such as the page number, the number of times the page has been modified, and a release label that identifies the update in which the leaf was last changed
- Status information. In a change pages publication, this indicates when the printed output is visually different from the published output for this page.
- Initial Page Types describe the page layout that was used to render the page. Page types are created using the **layout editor** and are applied by **mappings**.

10.5.13 Leaf Properties

The leaf properties dialog displays a set of characteristics associated with the active leaf in a **full looseleaf** publication.

Details

Page (Front): 23
Update: 015
Revisions: 0
Filename: 000n

Input

☐ Changed
☐ Renumbered
☒ Required inclusion
☒ Include
☒ Include unchanged output
☐ Leaf group

Output

☒ Changed
☐ Added or replaced
☐ Derived change
☐ Jump change
☐ Suppress link line

Initial Page Types

Front: {implied} Followed by: {implied} Blank Back: {implied}

Indicators

Type	Indicator
D	8/13
D	6/13
D	12/08

OK Cancel

These characteristics include:

- General information, such as the page number, the number of times the page has been modified, and a release label that identifies the update in which the leaf was last changed
- Status information. In a looseleaf publication, this indicates when a leaf marks the start of a leaf group, can carry a link line, or has been manually included in the update. In a changed pages publication, this indicates when the printed output is visually different from the published output for this page.
- Initial Page Types describe the page layouts assumed when rendering the content associated with the leaf. Page types are created using the [layout editor](#) and are applied by [mappings](#).

The initial leaf page types declare the following:

- Front — The page type assumed prior to rendering the front (odd) page of the leaf. A value of **{implied}** means that the leaf content will be rendered using the page type in force at the start of the leaf. The page type declared remains in force unless overridden by a style sheet mapping rule or the preferred followed by page layout.
- Followed by — The preferred page type applied when rendering all other non-empty pages created when processing the leaf. A value of **{implied}** means that the leaf content will be rendered using the page type in force at the start of the leaf. The page type declared here can be overridden by a style sheet mapping that assigns a different current and followed by page layout.
- Blank Back — This defines the preferred **intentionally blank** page type. In a looseleaf publication, this page type will be used when the rendered content of the leaf fits entirely within the first page of that leaf. This page type also sets the **{implied}** intentionally blank page type for all following leaves, and remains in force


unless overridden by the intentionally blank page type specified for a subsequent leaf.


TopLeaf will ignore an attempt to use a [Blank Back](#) page layout to render the content of a non-empty page.

- [Leaf Indicators](#) associate leaf specific metadata to individual leaves. When you compose the partition document, TopLeaf assigns the content of the default leaf indicators to each new leaf created. If the default indicators are varied from release to release, you can use the indicators to track a leaf-by-leaf version history for the document. See [Section 10.5.14](#) for more details.

Manually including leaves

TopLeaf provides two methods for the manual inclusion of leaves. A *soft leaf inclusion* occurs when you want TopLeaf to include an unchanged leaf in an update, even if the **content** of that leaf is unchanged. A *hard leaf inclusion* occurs when you want TopLeaf to include an unchanged leaf in an update, even if the rendered **visual appearance** of that leaf is unchanged.

To apply a soft leaf inclusion to a leaf, highlight the leaf you want to include from the leaf list. Check the **Include** control and then press **OK** to close the dialog. To remove a soft leaf inclusion uncheck the **Include** control, then press **OK** to close the dialog. The partition leaf tree will be redisplayed after you close the properties dialog. A  icon identifies a manually included leaf.

To apply a hard leaf inclusion to a leaf, highlight the leaf you want to include from the leaf list. Check the **Include Unchanged Output** control and then press **OK** to close the dialog. To remove a soft leaf inclusion uncheck the **Include** control, then press **OK** to close the dialog. The partition leaf tree will be redisplayed after you close the properties dialog. A  icon identifies a hard leaf inclusion.

Leaf groups

If you are using a [partition based](#) numbering scheme the leaf set can be organised into one or more leaf groups. Leaf groups are usually associated with a major document structural unit, such as a chapter, a table of contents, or an index. If set, the **Leaf Group** control indicates if the selected leaf is the first leaf in a leaf group.

In some circumstances you may need to manually alter the leaf group status. For example, removing the leaf group status on the second of two adjacent leaf groups allows you to reflow or [renumber](#) the leaves as a single leaf group. Alternatively, marking a leaf as the start of a new leaf group allows you to reflow or renumber a leaf subset within an existing leaf group. To apply or remove the leaf status that indicates a start of a leaf group, highlight the first leaf of the leaf group and check the **Leaf Group** control. Be aware that making arbitrary changes to the leaf group status can have implications for [optimized input change tracking](#) and the generation of additional point pages.

If you are using a [section based](#) numbering scheme the **Leaf Group** indicates if the selected leaf is the first leaf in a section. You cannot manually adjust this status.

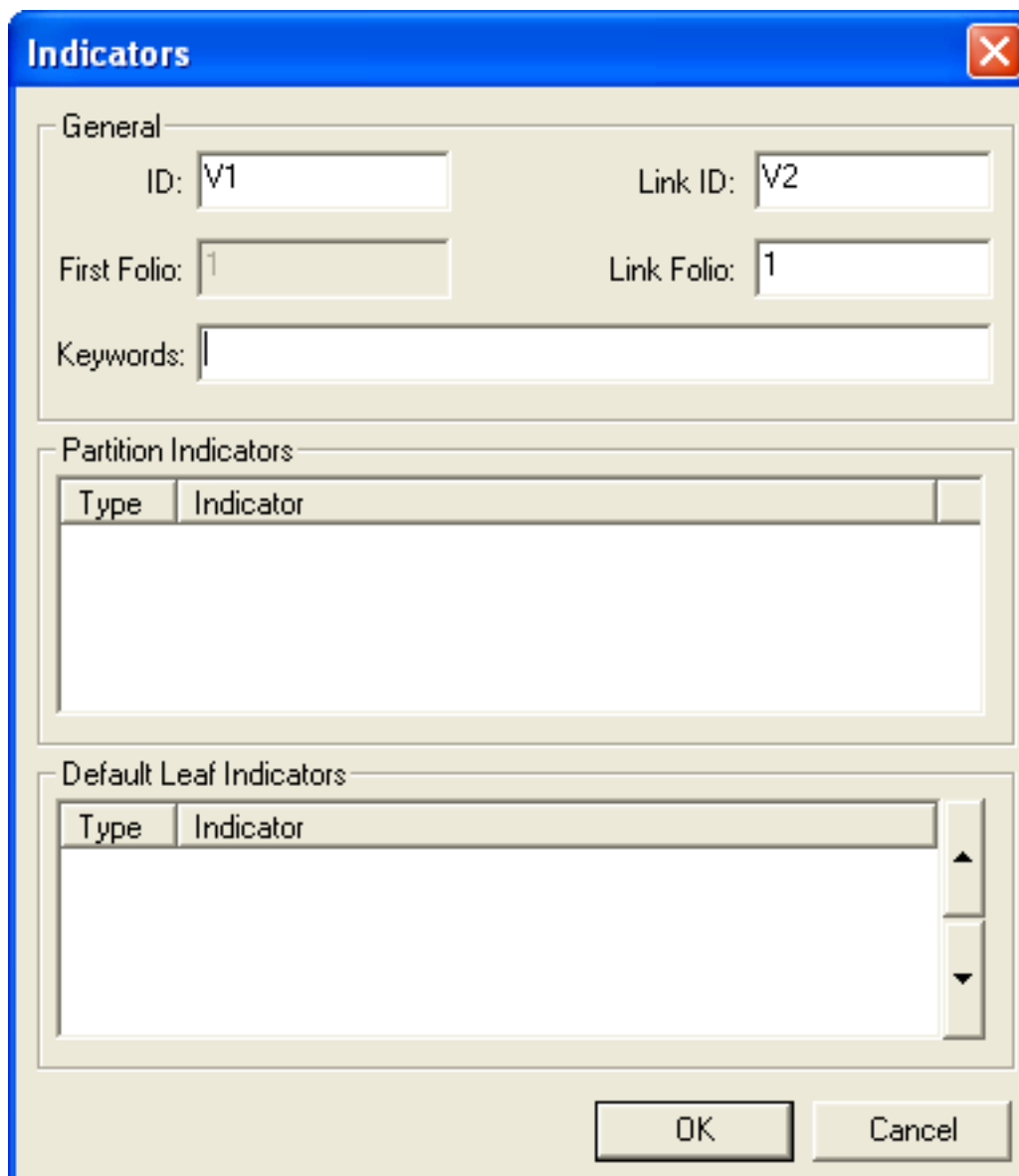
Suppressing link lines

You can suppress a link line by enabling the **Suppress link line** leaf property. This property is located on the leaf properties dialog, and is enabled for the last leaf of a leaf group, or the last leaf of a partition. To suppress the link line at the end of a leaf group, highlight the last leaf of a leaf group and check the **Suppress link line** control.

10.5.14 Indicators

Indicators are a facility for holding text that can be rendered on pages of the output without being included in the data. They can be used to store content that might include standard headers and

footers, effectivity or release dates, leaf specific modification history, or instructions used by stylesheet rules when rendering particular pages or sections of your documents.



The **Indicators** dialog box is used to configure various indicators for a partition. It features three main sections: **General**, **Partition Indicators**, and **Default Leaf Indicators**. The **General** section includes fields for **ID** (set to V1), **Link ID** (set to V2), **First Folio** (set to 1), **Link Folio** (set to 1), and a **Keywords** text area. The **Partition Indicators** and **Default Leaf Indicators** sections each contain a table with columns for **Type** and **Indicator**. The **Default Leaf Indicators** section also includes vertical scroll arrows on its right side. At the bottom of the dialog are **OK** and **Cancel** buttons.

Type	Indicator
------	-----------

Type	Indicator
------	-----------

The indicators are accessible through the menu **Commands » Indicators** and are set for the partition as a whole. In a looseleaf partition other indicators are accessible that are effective for a single leaf.

General indicators

The general indicators are provided for specific use as follows.

ID: is intended to supply a prefix for the page numbers (for example, **V1** for the partition that contains the data for Volume 1)

First Folio: instructs TopLeaf to start numbering pages from the given number. This must be an odd number within the range 1 to 32,767.

Link ID: and **Link Folio:** are intended for looseleaf partitions. They provide a means for printing link information that relates to the next partition and are described in [Section 10.5.14](#).

Keywords

The **Keywords:** field provides a place to store arbitrary text that can be rendered on a page or pages as required.

Partition Indicators

Partition indicators declare a set of labelled text strings that contain partition specific metadata. You can use this information to pass release specific information (for example, a revision history) into the rendered output leaves.

To insert a new indicator, right click in the open area within the group to display the [Insert Indicator](#) menu. Select a type (**A** to **Z** or blank) and insert the required text. Right click an existing indicator to display a modification menu that provides actions to insert before, insert after, modify or delete indicators.

Partition indicators can be accessed from a tag mapping by assigning their content to a user variable using the `<set />` command. The following example shows how to assign a variable with the value of a partition indicator:

```
<set var="Supplier" indicator="partition:S1" />
```

Default Leaf Indicators

Default leaf indicators declare a set of labelled text strings that will be assigned to all new leaves created in a looseleaf update. You can use this information to record release specific information (for example a revision history) within the rendered output leaves.

In a mainwork, the default leaf indicators are assigned to all leaves. In an update, the default leaf indicators are assigned only to new leaves generated as a result of changes to the partition content.

Leaf indicators can be accessed from a tag mapping by assigning their content to a user variable using the `<set />` command. The following examples shows how to assign a variable with the value of a leaf indicator:

```
<set var=LeafAuthor" indicator="leaf:A1" />
<set var=LeafAuthor" indicator="A1" />
```

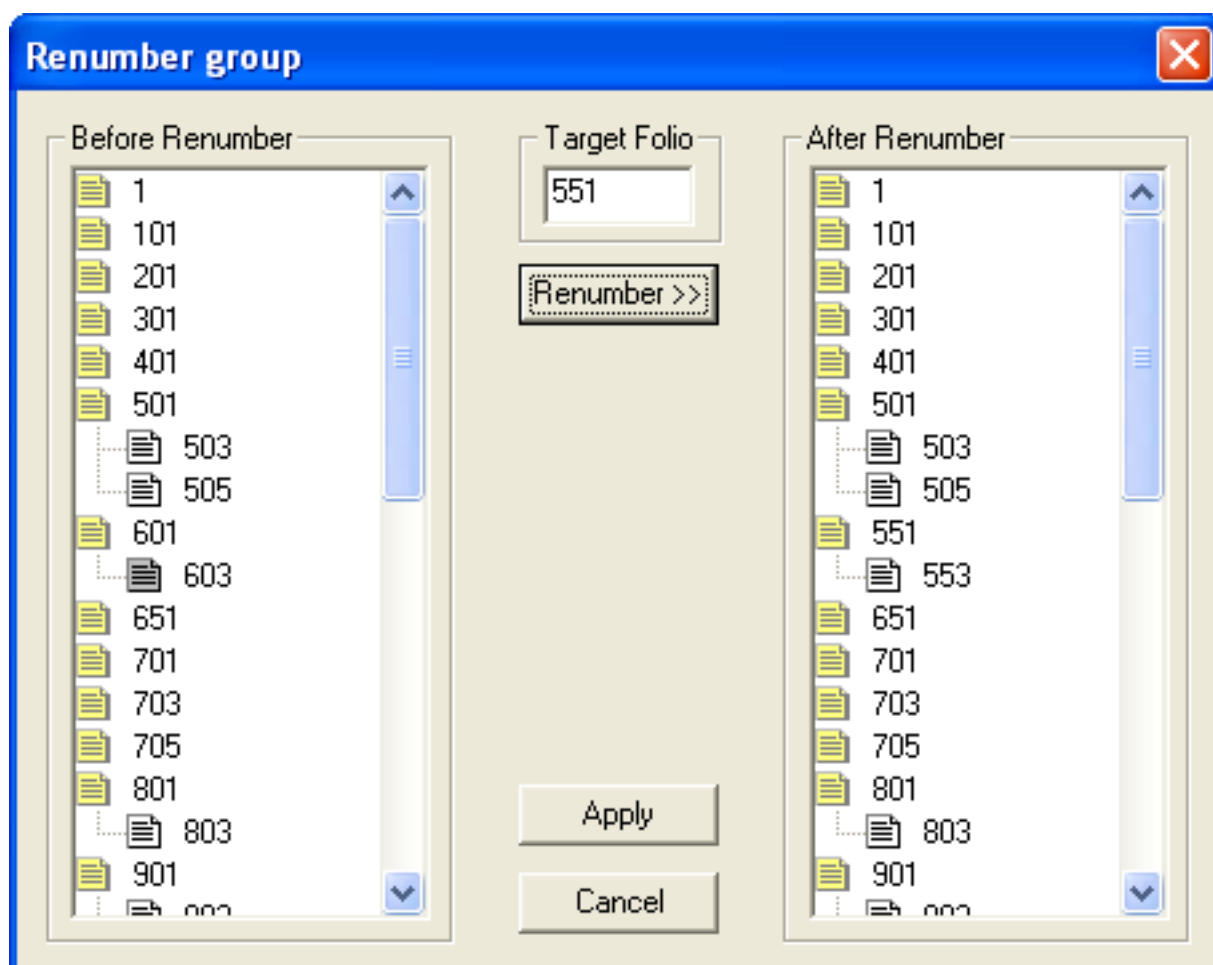
10.5.15 Label Release

By default, TopLeaf identifies each partition release with a sequential number starting from **0**. The [Label this Release](#) dialog provides a way to assign a descriptive string (for example, a date or a release title) that uniquely identifies the release. You can reference the partition release label by including the `{release-label}` system variable in your stylesheet mappings. Alternatively, your stylesheet mappings can assign the partition release label using the `<release-properties/>` directive.

10.5.16 Renumber

The [Renumber](#) dialog rennumbers the leaf group folio numbering sequence in a **full looseleaf** partition that uses a partition based numbering scheme.

The dialog is opened with the menu command Commands » Renumber.



The Before Renumber pane shows the existing leaf and group structure where the yellow icons identify group start leaves. Note that the leaves are numbered with TopLeaf's native scheme (the same numbers that are displayed in the leaf navigation pane) even if you are using custom code to print different page labels.

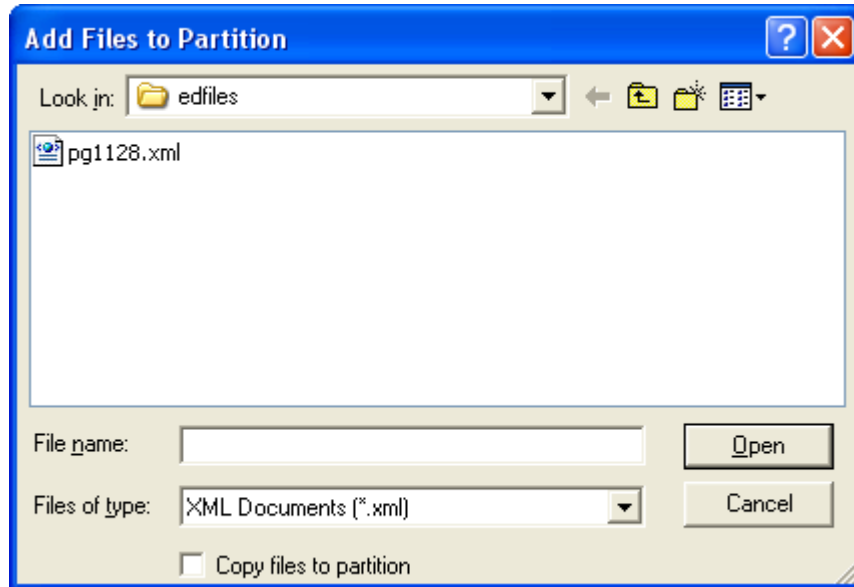
Click on the icon for any leaf in the group you want to renumber. The icons for the leaves that make up this section are changed from white to grey to identify them and the current number of the starting leaf is written into the Target Folio text box. Alter this number to the new start number you wish to use.

Press Renumber >> to test the change — TopLeaf will provide an explanatory message if the chosen number is not valid, otherwise the new leaf structure that will apply will be shown in the After Renumber pane.

If the displayed result is acceptable, press Apply to make this change to your partition. TopLeaf will make the changes then automatically start a composition run to reset the numbering to this pattern. Otherwise press Cancel or the Close button to exit without making any changes.

10.5.17 Add Files

The option Add Files to Partition ... allows additional files to be set up in the partition **book list**.



The display opens within the partition source document folder. To add a source document to the partition, browse to the file and select it. If the source document is to be copied into the partition source document folder, tick the box Copy files to this partition.

Click **O**pen to add the source document to the partition book list.

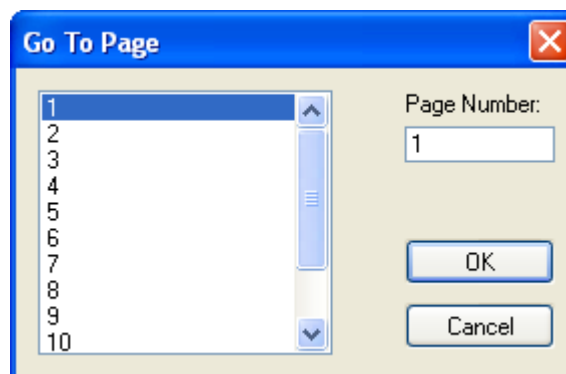
Restrictions

A partition book list that declares more than one absolute path name to an external source document is automatically assumed to identify the content for a **copy** partition.

If you add new members to a **linked** partition book list, the partition will be automatically assumed to be **copy**.

This command is disabled for all looseleaf update partitions.

10.5.18 Go To Page

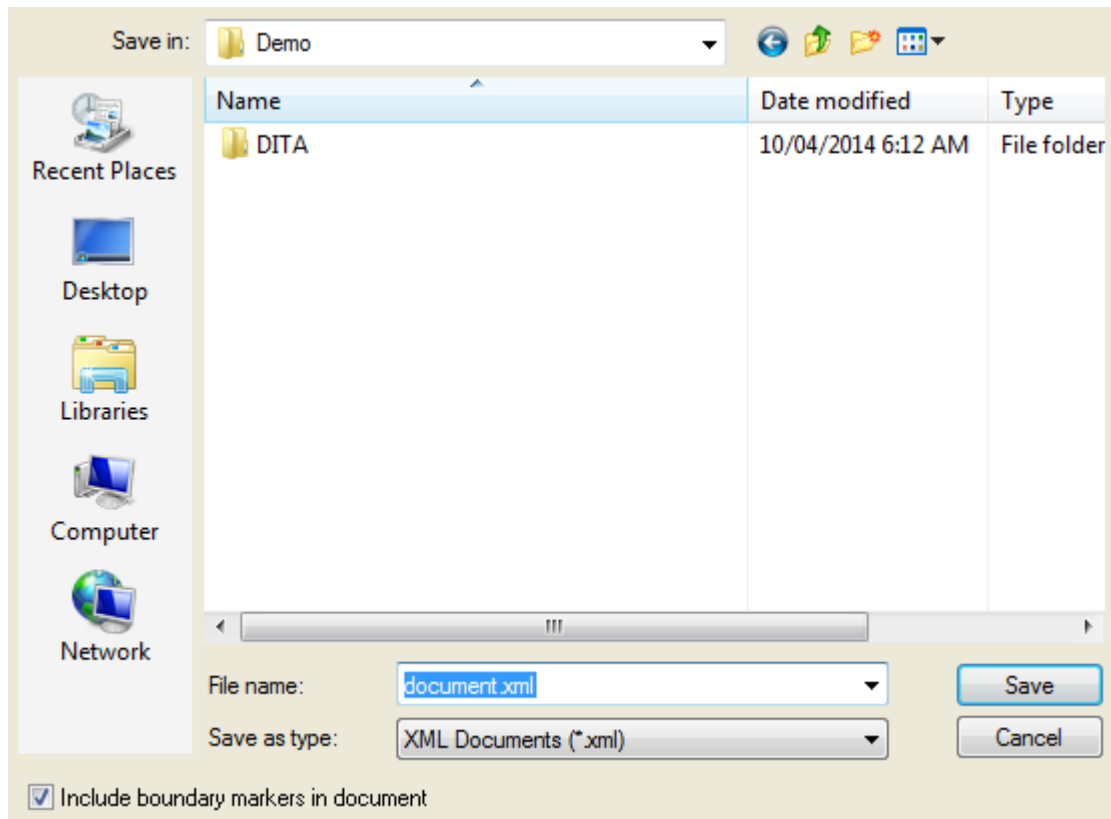


This dialog can be opened from the **P**age menu or the **P**review toolbar. It allows you to select the page displayed in the preview pane.

Select the page from the list of labels on the left and press **O**K. You can also enter a page number to select the corresponding page in the list.

10.5.19 Save As

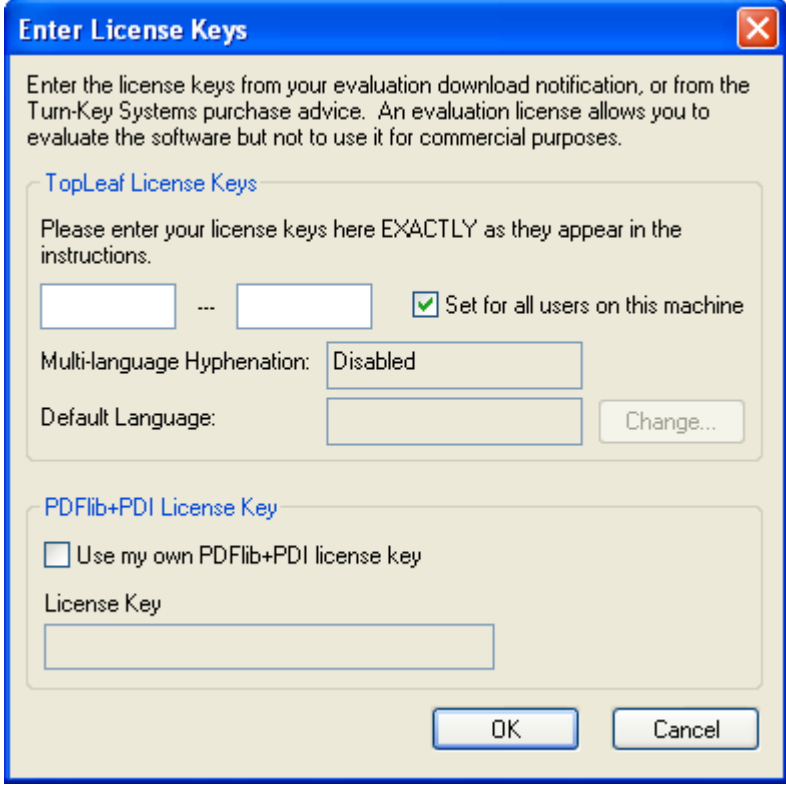
A TopLeaf partition contains XML content, rendered page images, and page or leaf status information that collectively defines a release snapshot of the document. Select **F**ile » **S**ave As ... option when you need to export the partition XML content to an external document file.



Exporting leaf and page boundary markers

When a **full looseleaf** document is published, TopLeaf allocates the document content to a set of document leaves. Each leaf associates a portion of the document content with a front and back output page. Within a document, leaf, page and line boundaries are identified using **boundary marker** processing instructions. When you export content from a full looseleaf partition, you can optionally choose to include the *published* boundary markers in the exported document.

10.5.20 License Keys

The image shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Enter License Keys" with a blue title bar and a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog has a light beige background. At the top, there is a paragraph of text: "Enter the license keys from your evaluation download notification, or from the Turn-Key Systems purchase advice. An evaluation license allows you to evaluate the software but not to use it for commercial purposes." Below this, there is a section titled "TopLeaf License Keys" in blue text. Under this section, it says "Please enter your license keys here EXACTLY as they appear in the instructions." There are two empty text input fields separated by an ellipsis "...". To the right of these fields is a checkbox labeled "Set for all users on this machine" which is checked. Below the input fields, there are two more fields: "Multi-language Hyphenation:" followed by a dropdown menu showing "Disabled", and "Default Language:" followed by an empty text input field and a "Change..." button. Below these fields is another section titled "PDFlib+PDI License Key" in blue text. Under this section, there is a checkbox labeled "Use my own PDFlib+PDI license key" which is unchecked. Below this checkbox is a text input field labeled "License Key". At the bottom right of the dialog are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

This dialog allows you to enter the license keys supplied by Turn-Key Systems to activate TopLeaf.

If the [Set for all users on this machine](#) checkbox is enabled you can select it to set the license information for anyone who uses this machine. If it is not selected the license information will only be applied to your account.

You can set the default language for all stylesheets by pressing the [Change...](#) button. This opens the [Preferences dialog](#).

The remaining fields on the dialog are only used for legacy stylesheets. Contact Turn-Key support if you have any questions about them.

11. Technical specifications

This chapter summarises the technical specifications for TopLeaf, including supported platforms, XML compliance issues, and known application issues of which you will need to be aware.

11.1 *Supported platforms*

This section contains information about the platforms on which TopLeaf runs.

11.1.1 Windows

TopLeaf runs on the following 32-bit and 64-bit versions of Microsoft Windows:

- desktop systems: Windows XP (SP2) or later;
- server systems: Windows Server 2003 or later.

Warning:

If you install TopLeaf on a 64-bit Windows platform you must install and select a 32-bit Java runtime system.

11.1.2 Linux

The TopLeaf API is available for 64-bit implementations of Linux. The TopLeaf workstation does not run on Linux.

Contact support@turnkey.com.au for information about the supported distributions.

11.2 *XML and SGML conformance*

This section details those areas where TopLeaf does not fully comply with XML and SGML specifications.

11.2.1 Input documents

TopLeaf requires its input to be in one of the following forms:

- XML (DTD optional)
- SGML (DTD required)

The supported encodings for XML documents are:

- UTF-8
- UTF-16
- ISO-8859-1

The following IANA-registered aliases for ISO-8859-1 are also recognised:

- ISO_8859-1:1987
- ISO_8859-1
- iso-ir-100
- csISOLatin1
- latin1
- l1
- IBM819
- CP819

Finally, documents encoded as US-ASCII will be regarded as equivalent to ISO-8859-1. This means that 8-bit characters in such documents will *not* be flagged as errors.

TopLeaf will not render source documents in other formats (for example, RTF, MS Word).

Turn-Key Systems provides freely under an open source licence the X-ICE system which allows you to set up a set of rules to convert MS Word readable documents into XML. This XML will be valid for any user supplied DTD. X-ICE requires that XMetaL be installed on your system.

11.2.2 Documents assumed to be valid

TopLeaf is not an XML or SGML validator. It assumes that any document presented to it is valid. An XML document that has no DTD is assumed to be well-formed. A DTD that is both defined and can be located by TopLeaf will be used only to identify empty elements, assign default attributes and control default whitespace handling.

TopLeaf does not process XML schemas.

TopLeaf deals with invalid document content as follows:

- Structural invalidity, such as a child element appearing at the wrong place in its parent, is ignored.
- Unknown tags or attributes will cause a runtime error unless TopLeaf is operating in DTD-less mode.
- Documents that are not well-formed will trigger a fatal error as soon as the badly formed element is encountered.

Source documents that are not well-formed or contain invalid markup may generate errors or warnings, or produce output that is rendered incorrectly when processed by TopLeaf.

11.2.3 XML name characters

Tag and attribute names declared or referenced in any document processed by TopLeaf must use name characters located within the US-ASCII (7 bit) character range:

```
NameChar ::= Letter | Digit | '.' | '-' | '_' | ':'
Name      ::= Letter | '_' | ':' (NameChar)*
Letter    ::= [#x0041-#x005A] | [#x0061-#x007A]
Digit     ::= [#x0030-#x0039]
```

This restriction also applies to TopLeaf tag and custom marker mappings. Custom marker names may not contain the following characters:

`\ : ' .`

11.2.4 User variable name characters

User variables are variables defined by the user from within the context of a tag mapping. A user variable name is a token beginning with an upper-case letter and followed by one or more user variable name characters.

A variable name that contains a '%' that is not followed by two hexadecimal digits is invalid.

```
Name      ::= StartChar (NameChar)*
StartChar ::= [A-Z]
NameChar  ::= Letter | Digit | PEseq | '.' | '-' | '_' | ':'
Letter    ::= [A-Za-z]
Digit     ::= [0-9]
```

```
HexDigit ::= [0-F]
PEseq ::= '%' HexDigit HexDigit
```

11.2.5 Comments

Comments may appear anywhere in a document outside other markup; in addition, they may appear within the document type declaration at places allowed by the grammar. They are not part of the document's character data and it is not possible to retrieve the text of comments.

11.2.6 Entity resolution

TopLeaf predefines entities in the ISO 8879 (SGML) sets listed below. This means that references to these entities will be replaced by the corresponding characters, even if the entities are not defined in the data or DTD.

ISO entity set	Description
iso-amsa	Added Mathematical Symbols: Arrows
iso-amsb	Added Mathematical Symbols: Binary Operators
iso-amsc	Added Mathematical Symbols: Delimiters
iso-amsn	Added Mathematical Symbols: Negated Relations
iso-amso	Added Mathematical Symbols: Ordinary
iso-amsr	Added Mathematical Symbols: Relations
iso-box	Box and Line Drawing
iso-cyr1	Cyrillic-1
iso-cyr2	Cyrillic-2
iso-dia	Diacritical Marks
iso-grk1	Greek-1
iso-grk2	Greek-2
iso-grk3	Greek-3
iso-grk4	Greek-4
iso-lat1	Latin-1
iso-lat2	Latin-2
iso-num	Numeric and Special Graphic
iso-pub	Publishing
iso-tech	General Technical

TopLeaf automatically defines a fallback definition for these entity sets. The fallback definitions will only be used for entities that are not declared in the DTD or catalog, and are unlikely to have any negative impact when typesetting your documents. To locate problems with entity resolution, select the **debug** option when composing. This will list all files read in the log, which will allow you to trace how and when entities are being defined.

11.2.7 DTD interpretation

While TopLeaf will scan a DTD it does not attempt to verify the correctness of the DTD, nor to validate the source against the DTD. Only the following information is extracted:

- valid tag and attribute names
- default attribute values
- content type (mixed, element or empty)
- entity definitions

TopLeaf allows elements to be stored and re-used. However, when composing a document, this interpretation of the DTD becomes a useful feature rather than a limitation.

Where an element is declared in a DTD then the content type is used to determine how TopLeaf **processes white space** within the element content or any **user customization** emitted when that element tag is mapped.

11.2.8 SGML declaration

TopLeaf ignores any supplied SGML declaration and instead makes the following assumptions:

- All tags/entities are in the standard forms `<tag>...</tag>` and `&ent;`
- All elements have a required start tag and optional end tag.
- Standard name and number characters are used.

If your source document complies to a non-standard declaration you will need to apply a pre-transform to comply with the above assumptions.

11.2.9 CALS table processing

TopLeaf supports a subset of the CALS table model DTD as defined at <http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>.

Implementation

The TopLeaf composition engine renders CALS tables incrementally — as table rows arrive — rather than waiting for all the data before beginning to render each table.

Table directionality

The directionality of a table is determined by the inherited directionality (the default is left-to-right).

Table nesting

The `<entrytbl>` element allows for a single level of nesting within CALS tables. A table cell can contain another nested table subject to the following restrictions:

- Nested tables may have a header, but nested table header rows do not repeat if the table breaks across a page or column.
- The maximum depth of a nested table header is the data block depth less the minimum table row depth.

Table orientation

The `orient` attribute is ignored by the table processor. However, it can be used in a **mapping selector** to change to an appropriate layout.

Column separators

Internal table column separators are declared using the `colsep` attribute. This is interpreted as adding a single ruling to the right side of a table cell. If a DTD is not specified then the implied table

column separator is visible. Individual mappings can control the implied table column separator by toggling the state of the Implied column separator is visible from the mapping **Table tab**.

Row separators

Internal table row separators are declared using the **rowsep** attribute. This is interpreted as adding a single ruling to the bottom edge of a table cell. If a DTD is not specified then the implied table row separator is visible. Individual mappings can control the implied table row separator by toggling the state of the Implied row separator is visible from the mapping **Table tab**.

Table groups

The DocBook DTD allows a **table** or **informaltable** to contain a number of **graphic** or **mediaobject** elements instead of **tgroup** elements.

Tables that do not declare **tgroup** elements are processed as non-tabular container block elements. In particular, none of the standard table styling effects (for example, the table **frame** style) will be applied.

Row groups

Table rows may be grouped into a table head and one or more table body sections, using the **thead** and **tbody** elements. The use of a **tfoot** block will generate a non-fatal warning, and the block will be processed as a **tbody** block.

Table columns

The number of columns within a table **<tgroup>** is defined by the **cols** attribute, not by the number of **<colspec/>** declarations or the number of **<entry>** cells defined in a table row. The **cols** attribute must be declared as a positive integer.

Table columns widths may be specified using one or more **<colspec/>** declarations. If the number of table columns defined by the **cols** attribute exceeds the number of explicitly declared **<colspec/>** definitions, additional declarations equivalent to **<colspec colwidth="1*" >** will be inferred. The typesetting engine will generate an error if the number of **<colspec/>** declarations is greater than the number of columns declared in the containing **<tgroup>**, or when a table **<entry/>** or **<spanspec/>** range references an undefined **<colspec/>**.

Column widths

Column widths can be specified as either a fixed measure using one of the CALS units — **pt** (points), **cm** (centimeters), **mm** (millimeters), **pi** (picas), **px** (pixels) and **in** (inches), or a proportional measure such as "10*".

A non-standard extension to the CALS table model recognises the following additional fixed measure units: **pc** (treated as a synonym for **pi**) and **dp** (decipoints).

The default fixed unit is interpreted as **pt** if neither a proportion or a fixed unit is specified.

Measurements in **px** (pixels) are converted to an absolute measure using the current device resolution. The **<toleaf-properties/>** directive can be used to set the device resolution.

The use of mixed mode specifications that declare a combination of proportional and fixed measures (e.g. "2*+3pt") is not supported.

If the total requested width for all columns exceeds the available measure, TopLeaf will proportionally reduce all table widths to ensure that the table fits within the block.

Cell horizontal alignment

Explicit references to the **char** and **charoff** attributes may generate a warning when the table is rendered. A value of **align="char"** is interpreted as **align="right"**

Cell vertical alignment

A non-standard extension to the CALS table model recognises the following vertical alignment mode: **step**. A cell step alignment vertically aligns the first line of content in a cell with the last line of content in the previous adjacent cell. See the [<cell-properties/>](#) directive for more details.

Cross page cell vertical spanning

Cell vertical spanning is supported. The typesetting engine will generate a fatal error if a cell declares a negative vertical span. By default, a vertical span will not split across a page boundary. Use the command `<table-properties split-rows="yes"/>` if you want a cell vertical span to split across a page boundary.

Cross page row splitting

CALS tables that are allowed to continue across column or page boundaries will normally break between table rows. When splittable table rows are enabled, a break across a column or page boundary may also occur within a table row. See the `<table-properties/>` directive for more details.

Tag processing

When CALS table processing is enabled the following elements are assumed to be components of a CALS table structure:

- `table`
- `informaltable`
- `thead`
- `tbody`
- `tfoot`
- `colspec`
- `rowspec`
- `spanspec`
- `row`
- `entry`
- `entrytbl`

The processing of all recognised CALS table element names is *case insensitive*. For example, this means that the CALS table processor regards the tags `<entry>` and `<Entry>` as identical.

The processing of all recognised CALS table attribute names is *case insensitive*. For example, this means that the CALS table processor regards the `row` tag attributes `rowsep="1"` and `Rowsep="1"` as identical.

In DTD-less mode, TopLeaf refers to an internally defined CALS table DTD fragment that defines these tags and a set of default attribute values.

These restrictions may have implications if you need to map CALS table elements or attributes. See [CALS table tag classifications](#) for more details.

Unsupported features

The following features are not supported:

- The `tfoot` element.
- Separate `colspec` declarations within `thead` or `tbody` elements.
- The ability to redefine columns within `thead` or `tbody` elements.

11.2.10 HTML table processing

TopLeaf supports a subset of the HTML table model DTD as defined at <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/struct/tables.html>.

Implementation

The TopLeaf composition engine renders HTML tables incrementally — as table rows arrive — rather than waiting for all the data before beginning to render each table.

Table width and alignment

The table **width** and **align** attributes cannot be used to specify a preferred width or alignment for the entire HTML table.

Table directionality

The directionality of a table is either the inherited directionality (the default is left-to-right) or that specified by the **dir** attribute for the **TABLE** element.

Table nesting

A table cell can contain another nested table subject to the following restrictions:

- Cells in a header row may not contain tables.
- Nested tables may have a header, but nested table header rows do not repeat if the table breaks across a page or column.
- The maximum depth of a nested table header is the data block depth less the minimum table row depth.

Table frames

The table **frame** attribute specifies which sides of the frame surrounding a table will be visible.

The table **border** attribute is recognised and is processed in the following way:

- Setting **border="0"** implies **frame="void"** and, unless otherwise specified, **rules="none"**.
- Other values of **border** imply **frame="border"** and, unless otherwise specified, **rules="all"**
- If the **border** attribute is not explicitly declared, the default value of the **rules** attribute is **"none"**

You cannot use the value of the **border** attribute to set the table border width.

Certain table frame requests may produce unexpected results. For example, the use of **<table frame="void" rules="rows" >** will produce a ruleoff under each table row, including the last row in the table.

Internal table rules

The **table** element **rules** attribute specifies which rules appear between cells within an HTML table. The implied value of the **rules** attribute is **"none"**. Unless otherwise specified, a non-zero **border** implies **rules="all"**

A non-standard extension to the HTML table model recognises the **colsep** and **rowsep** attributes within a **<td>** or **<th>** element. These attributes are analogous to the equivalent attributes within a CALS **<entry>** tag. They can be used to declare the internal table column and row separator for an individual table cell.

Individual mappings can control the way TopLeaf interprets the *implied rules* attribute value. This is done by toggling the settings for Implied row/column separator is visible from the mapping **Table**

tab. The state of the implied column separator is used when processing vertical rules that appear between table cells or column groups. The state of the implied row separator is used when processing rules that appear below table cells or row groups.

Row groups

Table rows may be grouped into a table head and one or more table body sections, using the **thead** and **tbody** elements. The **tfoot** element is not supported. The use of a **tfoot** block will generate a non-fatal warning, and the block will be processed as a **tbody** block.

The **table** element attributes **scope** and **headers** are not supported.

Table columns

A table may contain optional **col** and **colgroup** elements to specify column widths and groupings. If you do not specify a **colgroup** block or explicit **col** declarations then each table column will be allocated a percentage of the available data column width.

TopLeaf applies the following rules when calculating the number of table columns:

1. If the **table** element contains **colgroup** or **col** elements, then the number of columns is calculated by summing the following:
 - For each **col** element, take the value of its **span** attribute (default value 1).
 - For each **colgroup** element containing at least one **col** element, ignore the **span** attribute for the **colgroup** element. For each **col** element within the **colgroup** take the value of its **span** attribute (default value 1).
 - For each empty **colgroup** element, take the value of its **span** attribute (default value 1).
2. Otherwise, if the **table** element does not contain any **colgroup** or **col** elements, the number of columns is calculated on the basis of what is required by the table cells for each row processed as the table is incrementally rendered.

It is an error if a table contains **colgroup** or **col** declarations and the calculated number of columns determined by steps 1 and 2 are not identical.

Because TopLeaf renders HTML tables incrementally, it is preferable that an HTML table defines the number of columns and their widths before the first row of the table is processed. The simplest way to do this is to specify the table columns using **col** or **colgroup** declarations.

Column widths

Column widths can be specified as a pixel value, a percentage, or a relative length. Percentage (e.g. **width="20%"**) and proportional (e.g. **width="20*"**) specifications are resolved as a percentage of the available measure (the space available after applying **paragraph formatting**).

A non-standard extension to the HTML table model permits the specification of column widths using one of the following fixed measure units — **pt** (points), **cm** (centimeters), **mm** (millimeters), **pi** (picas), **in** (inches), **pc** (treated as a synonym for **pi**) and **dp** (decipoints).

The column width is interpreted as a pixel value (**px**) if neither a proportion, relative length, or a non-standard fixed unit is specified.

Measurements in **px** (pixels) are converted to an absolute measure using the current device resolution. The **<toleaf-properties/>** directive can be used to set the device resolution.

Use of the special form **width="0*"** (zero asterisk) is not supported.

In the case where an HTML table *does not* define a set of **col** or **colgroup** declarations, the table renderer will attempt to determine the column widths using the value of the **width** attribute in **td** and **th** elements. Specifying column widths in this way can lead to malformed tables.

If the total requested width for all columns exceeds the available measure, TopLeaf will proportionally reduce all table widths to ensure that the table fits within the block.

Cell margins

The table `cellspacing`, `cellpadding`, `scope` and `header` attributes are not supported.

Cell horizontal alignment

Explicit references to the `char` and `charoff` attributes may generate a warning when the table is rendered. A value of `align="char"` is interpreted as `align="right"`.

Cell vertical alignment

A non-standard extension to the HTML table model recognises the following vertical alignment mode: **step**. A cell step alignment vertically aligns the first line of content in a cell with the last line of content in the previous adjacent cell. See the [<cell-properties/>](#) directive for more details.

Cross page cell vertical spanning

Cell vertical spanning is supported. The typesetting engine will generate a fatal error if a cell declares a negative vertical span. By default, a vertical span will not split across a page boundary. Use the command `<table-properties split-rows="yes"/>` if you want a cell vertical span to split across a page boundary.

Cross page row splitting

HTML tables that are allowed to continue across column or page boundaries will normally break between table rows. When splittable table rows are enabled, a break across a column or page boundary may also occur within a table row. See the [<table-properties/>](#) directive for more details.

Tag processing

When HTML table processing is enabled the following elements are assumed to be components of an HTML table structure:

- `table`
- `caption`
- `thead`
- `tbody`
- `tfoot`
- `colgroup`
- `col`
- `tr`
- `th`
- `td`

The processing of all recognised HTML table tags is *case insensitive*. For example, this means that the HTML table processor regards the tags `<td>` and `<Td>` as identical.

The processing of all recognised HTML table attribute names is *case insensitive*. For example, this means that the HTML table processor regards the attributes declared in the tags `<table border="1">` and `<Table Border="1" >` as identical.

In DTD-less mode, TopLeaf refers to an internally defined HTML table DTD fragment that defines these tags and a set of default attribute values.

These restrictions may have implications if you need to map HTML table elements or attributes. See [HTML table tag classifications](#) for more details.

11.2.11 Advanced SGML features

Features supported include:

- **INCLUDE**, **IGNORE** and **CDATA** blocks
- omitted end tags

Features *not* supported include:

- **RCDATA** blocks are treated as **CDATA**
- **SHORTREF**, **SUBDOC**, **CONCUR**, **RANK**

11.2.12 Attribute handling

The maximum length of an attribute value is 32,000 characters. Note that some characters are expanded into character references internally, and the extra characters required for this are included in this limit.

All attributes are treated as type **CDATA**, except that **ENTITY** attributes are expanded.

Default attribute values are honored. If the default is **#IMPLIED**, then the attribute is assigned the value “#IMPLIED” as a literal string. The same applies to **#CURRENT**, **#CONREF** etc.

If there is no DTD, any missing attributes default to **#IMPLIED**.

11.2.13 Pseudo parameter entities

TopLeaf expands some strings of the form **%_name**; in attribute values as if they were parameter entities.

Workaround: use **%_name**; instead.

11.2.14 OASIS catalog support

TopLeaf can use the catalog mechanism as described in OASIS Technical Resolution 9401:1997 (see <http://www.oasis-open.org/specs/tr9401.html>) to assist in the resolution of entity references.

TopLeaf's support for the OASIS catalog mechanism is subject to the following restrictions:

- The **NOTATION**, **DELEGATE**, **BASE** and **OVERRIDE** keywords are ignored.
- TopLeaf will always use the public identifier to resolve an entity if it can.
- References to unresolvable secondary catalog files will generate a non-fatal error.

XML catalogs are not supported.

11.2.15 Language support

TopLeaf can process content for Western, RTL, East Asian (CJK) and many other languages provided the necessary fonts are installed on the host system. TopLeaf also provides support for **bidirectional processing**.

11.2.16 Line breaking rules

TopLeaf applies language specific line breaking rules to determine the position at which a line break may occur.

When processing languages that use white space to identify word breaks (for example, Western European languages), a word break will only be used to end a line if the following character is permitted at the start of the next line. The table below lists the characters that are not permitted at the start of a line unless followed immediately by an alphabetic or numeric character:

Code	Name
U+0021	EXCLAMATION MARK
U+0025	PERCENT SIGN
U+0029	RIGHT PARENTHESIS
U+002C	COMMA
U+002E	FULL STOP
U+003A	COLON
U+003B	SEMICOLON
U+003F	QUESTION MARK
U+005D	RIGHT SQUARE BRACKET
U+007D	RIGHT CURLY BRACKET
U+00A8	DIAERESIS
U+00B0	DEGREE SIGN
U+00B7	MIDDLE DOT
U+00BB	RIGHT-POINTING DOUBLE ANGLE QUOTATION MARK
U+02C7	CARON
U+02C9	MODIFIER LETTER MACRON

CJK languages

The following characters are not permitted at the start of a line when processing Chinese, Japanese, or Korean content:

Code	Name
U+0021	EXCLAMATION MARK
U+0025	PERCENT SIGN
U+0029	RIGHT PARENTHESIS
U+002C	COMMA
U+002E	FULL STOP
U+003A	COLON
U+003B	SEMICOLON
U+003F	QUESTION MARK
U+005D	RIGHT SQUARE BRACKET
U+007D	RIGHT CURLY BRACKET
U+00A8	DIAERESIS
U+00B0	DEGREE SIGN

Code	Name
U+00B7	MIDDLE DOT
U+00BB	RIGHT-POINTING DOUBLE ANGLE QUOTATION MARK
U+02C7	CARON
U+02C9	MODIFIER LETTER MACRON
U+2010	HYPHEN
U+2013	ENDASH
U+2014	EMDASH
U+2016	DOUBLE VERTICAL PRIME
U+2019	RIGHT SINGLE QUOTATION MARK
U+201D	RIGHT DOUBLE QUOTATION MARK
U+2022	BULLET
U+2025	TWO DOT LEADER
U+2026	HORIZONTAL ELLIPSIS
U+2032	PRIME
U+2033	DOUBLE PRIME
U+203C	DOUBLE EXCLAMATION MARK
U+2047	DOUBLE QUESTION MARK
U+2048	QUESTION EXCLAMATION MARK
U+2049	EXCLAMATION QUESTION MARK
U+2103	DEGREE CELSIUS
U+2236	RATIO
U+3001	IDEOGRAPHIC COMMA
U+3002	IDEOGRAPHIC FULL STOP
U+3003	DITTO MARK
U+3005	IDEOGRAPHIC ITERATION MARK
U+3009	RIGHT ANGLE BRACKET
U+300B	RIGHT DOUBLE ANGLE BRACKET
U+300C	LEFT CORNER BRACKET
U+300D	RIGHT CORNER BRACKET
U+300F	RIGHT WHITE CORNER BRACKET
U+3011	RIGHT BLACK LENTICULAR BRACKET
U+3015	RIGHT TORTOISE SHELL BRACKET
U+3017	RIGHT WHITE LENTICULAR BRACKET

Code	Name
U+3019	RIGHT WHITE TORTOISE SHELL BRACKET
U+301C	WAVE DASH
U+301E	DOUBLE PRIME QUOTATION MARK
U+301F	LOW DOUBLE PRIME QUOTATION MARK
U+303B	VERTICAL IDEOGRAPHIC ITERATION MARK
U+3041	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL A
U+3043	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL I
U+3045	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL U
U+3047	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL E
U+3049	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL O
U+3063	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL TU
U+3083	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL YA
U+3087	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL YO
U+308E	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL WA
U+3095	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL KA
U+3096	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL KE
U+30A0	KATAKANA-HIRAGANA DOUBLE HYPHEN
U+30A1	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL A
U+30A3	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL I
U+30A5	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL U
U+30A7	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL E
U+30A9	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL O
U+30C3	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL TU
U+30E3	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL YA
U+30E5	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL YU
U+30E7	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL YO
U+30EE	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL WA
U+30F5	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL KA
U+30F6	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL KE
U+30FB	KATAKANA MIDDLE DOT
U+30FC	KATAKANA-HIRAGANA PROLONGED SOUND MARK
U+30FD	KATAKANA ITERATION MARK
U+30FE	KATAKANA VOICED ITERATION MARK

Code	Name
U+31F0	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL KU
U+31F1	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL SI
U+31F2	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL SU
U+31F3	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL TO
U+31F4	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL NU
U+31F5	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL HA
U+31F6	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL HI
U+31F7	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL HU
U+31F8	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL HE
U+31F9	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL HO
U+31FA	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL MU
U+31FB	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL RA
U+31FC	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL R
U+31FD	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL RU
U+31FE	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL RE
U+31FF	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL RO
U+FE4F	WAVY LOW LINE
U+FE50	SMALL COMMA
U+FE52	SMALL FULL STOP
U+FE54	SMALL SEMICOLON
U+FE55	SMALL COLON
U+FE56	SMALL QUESTION MARK
U+FE57	SMALL EXCLAMATION MARK
U+FE5A	SMALL RIGHT PARENTHESIS
U+FE5B	SMALL LEFT CURLY BRACKET
U+FE5E	SMALL RIGHT TORTOISE SHELL BRACKET
U+FF01	FULL-WIDTH EXCLAMATION MARK
U+FF02	FULL-WIDTH QUOTATION MARK
U+FF05	FULL-WIDTH PERCENT SIGN
U+FF07	FULL-WIDTH APOSTROPHE
U+FF09	FULL-WIDTH RIGHT PARENTHESIS
U+FF0C	FULL-WIDTH COMMA
U+FF0E	FULL-WIDTH FULL STOP

Code	Name
U+FF1A	FULL-WIDTH COLON
U+FF1B	FULL-WIDTH SEMICOLON
U+FF1F	FULL-WIDTH QUESTION MARK
U+FF3D	FULL-WIDTH RIGHT SQUARE BRACKET
U+FF40	FULL-WIDTH GRAVE ACCENT
U+FF5C	FULL-WIDTH VERTICAL LINE
U+FF5D	FULL-WIDTH RIGHT CURLY BRACKET
U+FF5E	FULL-WIDTH TILDE
U+FF60	FULL-WIDTH RIGHT WHITE PARENTHESIS
U+FF64	HALF-WIDTH IDEOGRAPHIC COMMA
U+FFE0	FULL-WIDTH CENT SIGN
U+FFE6	FULL-WIDTH WON SIGN

The following characters are not permitted at the end of a line when processing Chinese, Japanese, or Korean content:

Code	Name
U+0028	EXCLAMATION MARK
U+003C	LESS THAN
U+003F	QUESTION MARK
U+005B	LEFT SQUARE BRACKET
U+005C	BACKSLASH
U+007B	OPEN CURLY BRACKET
U+00AB	LEFT POINTING DOUBLE ANGLE QUOTATION MARK
U+2018	LEFT SINGLE QUOTATION MARK
U+201C	LEFT DOUBLE QUOTATION MARK
U+2035	REVERSE PRIME
U+3008	LEFT POINTING ANGLE BRACKET
U+300A	LEFT DOUBLE ANGLE BRACKET
U+300C	LEFT CORNER BRACKET
U+300E	LEFT WHITE CORNER BRACKET
U+3010	LEFT BLACK LENTICULAR BRACKET
U+3014	LEFT TORTOISE SHELL BRACKET
U+3016	LEFT WHITE LENTICULAR BRACKET

Code	Name
U+3018	LEFT WHITE TORTOISE SHELL BRACKET
U+301D	REVERSED DOUBLE PRIME QUOTATION MARK
U+FE59	SMALL LEFT PARENTHESIS
U+FE5B	SMALL LEFT CURLY BRACKET
U+FE5D	SMALL LEFT TORTOISE SHELL BRACKET
U+FF04	FULL-WIDTH DOLLAR SIGN
U+FF08	FULL-WIDTH LEFT PARENTHESIS
U+FF0E	FULL-WIDTH FULL STOP
U+FF10	FULL-WIDTH ZERO
U+FF11	FULL-WIDTH ONE
U+FF12	FULL-WIDTH TWO
U+FF13	FULL-WIDTH THREE
U+FF14	FULL-WIDTH FOUR
U+FF15	FULL-WIDTH FIVE
U+FF16	FULL-WIDTH SIX
U+FF17	FULL-WIDTH SEVEN
U+FF18	FULL-WIDTH EIGHT
U+FF19	FULL-WIDTH NINE
U+FF3B	FULL-WIDTH LEFT SQUARE BRACKET
U+FF5B	FULL-WIDTH LEFT CURLY BRACKET
U+FF5F	FULL-WIDTH LEFT WHITE PARENTHESIS
U+FFE6	FULL-WIDTH WON SIGN

RTL languages

The following characters are not permitted at the start of a line when processing RTL content:

Code	Name
U+060C	ARABIC COMMA
U+061B	ARABIC SEMICOLON

11.2.17 Soft hyphens

TopLeaf processes all soft hyphens (Unicode code point **U+00AD**) declared *within* a word as invisible zero-width formatting characters that indicate a preferred line break position. Any soft hyphen that is not followed by a character identified by **Unicode** as a letter is processed by the composition engine as a hard hyphen (Unicode code point **U+002D**) .

11.2.18 Spaces

The following table lists the space, non-breaking space, and fixed width spaces recognised by TopLeaf. All fixed space widths are expressed as a fraction of an **em** (nominally, the font point size):

Code	Name	Width
U+0020	SPACE	The width of an interword space is determined by the current minimum and maximum interword space width.
U+00A0	NO-BREAK SPACE	The non-breaking counterpart of a SPACE (U+0020).
U+2002	EN SPACE	1/2 em
U+2003	EM SPACE	1 em
U+2004	3-PER-EM SPACE	1/3 em
U+2005	4-PER-EM SPACE	1/4 em
U+2006	6-PER-EM SPACE	1/6 em
U+2007	FIGURE SPACE	1/2 em
U+2008	PUNCTUATION SPACE	width of a FULL STOP (U+002E) in the current font.
U+2009	THIN SPACE	1/4 em
U+200A	HAIR SPACE	1/8 em
U+200B	ZERO WIDTH SPACE	0
U+200C	ZERO WIDTH NON-JOINER	0
U+202F	NARROW NO-BREAK SPACE	1/2 em to the current maximum interword space width.
U+205F	MATHEMATICAL SPACE	1/4 em
U+2060	WORD JOINER	0

Note:

In TopLeaf, the width of a thin space (U+2009) is equal to the width of a 1/4 em space. The **Unicode** standard defines the width of a thin space as being either 1/5 em or 1/6 em. You can **redefine** the width of a thin space if this is a requirement of your document style.

11.2.19 Unicode support

When rendering Unicode characters:

- Only characters in the Basic Multilingual Plane are recognised.
- The Unicode formatting characters **U+2028** (line separator) and **U+2029** (paragraph separator) are ignored.
- Within RTL content, combining characters are merged with the corresponding base character. Within LTR content, combining characters are rendered correctly, but are not merged with the corresponding base character.
- TopLeaf does not support the use of characters in the Unicode control code range **U+0080** to **U+009F** (the C1 control range). Any use of these characters will give indeterminate

results in the rendered output.

11.3 Implementation

The following specifications are supported when you run TopLeaf. Actual limits and performance will depend on your computer's configuration. The composition engine may generate a fatal error if you exceed these limits.

11.3.1 Partition

Attribute	Maximum
Number of pages	32,000
Number of leaf groups or leaf sections	32,000
Number of releases	999

11.3.2 Mappings

Attribute	Maximum
Number of tag and custom marker mappings	32,000
Length of a <u>Tag-In-Context</u> path or a <u>Custom Marker</u> name	240 characters
Length of an <u>Attribute Selector</u> path	240 characters
Number of user variables	256,000
User variable or system variable string length	32,000 characters
Assigned user variable integer value	$\pm 2,000,000$
Assigned user variable measure	32,760 decipoints (approximately 115.5cm, or 45.5 inches)
Length of scanned captured content	2,000,000 characters
Length of a start tag or end tag user customization	32,000 characters

11.3.3 Layout

Attribute	Maximum
Number of page layouts in a single style sheet	100
Number of data columns per page layout	9
Number of fixed blocks or fixed rules per page layout	32,000
Maximum page width	32,760 decipoints (approximately 115.5cm, or 45.5 inches)

Technical specifications

Attribute	Maximum
Maximum page depth	32,760 decipoints (approximately 115.5cm, or 45.5 inches)
Maximum length for a content name or page type name	32 characters
Number of rendered lines per page	32,000
Length of rendered line	32,000 characters

11.3.4 Typesetting structures

Attribute	Maximum
Table nesting	1 (CALS), 9 (HTML)
Number of table columns	1000
Number of table rows	32,000
Number of times a table row may split (if table row splitting is enabled)	Any
Table header depth	Data block depth less minimum table row depth
Auto repeating table headers	1 (the table header from the outermost table will be repeated if the table spreads over multiple data columns)
Active running heads	5
Active data telltales	10
Column footnotes per page layout	1000
Number of times a column footnote may split (if column footnote splitting is enabled)	1
Page footnotes per document	1000
Number of times a page footnote may split (if page footnote splitting is enabled)	Any
Number of floats per document	32,000 characters
Maximum depth of an unsplittable page footnote	Page depth less minimum data block height
Maximum depth of a sidenote, running head, or float	Data block depth
Maximum depth of bound content	Data block depth
Length of a XML start or end tag (tag name, and all explicitly declared attributes)	32,000 characters
Length of a running head, note or float	2,000,000 characters
Length of a TOC, Index or XREF entry	32,000 characters
Default page assembly timeout interval	180 seconds

11.3.5 Custom content

The content of a user defined **mapping customization** must be a text string or well-formed XML fragment. Because pre-content and post-content customizations are parsed separately, any custom marker container opened within a mapping customization must be closed within the same customization.

Each mapping customization is processed as *mixed content*. This means that all keyed white space characters will be honored, with multiple white spaces collapsing to a single space .

11.3.6 Notes and floats

When the depth of a column float exceeds the maximum available float depth, TopLeaf will attempt to split the float into two or more separate floats. The content of the split float will be rendered over as many columns as needed to hold the material, after which the normal text will resume. TopLeaf will generate a non-fatal error if an oversized float cannot be split.

11.3.7 Page size and measures

You can use centimetres, millimetres, or picas to specify and display the values shown in each Topleaf style sheet management dialog. TopLeaf automatically converts all values to decipoints, and this may result in a slight loss of accuracy. Choose points or decipoints if you need to use the full accuracy of the program.

11.3.8 Input leaf comparison

Full looseleaf publishing works by allocating the document content to one or more document leaves. When the document is modified, TopLeaf compares the content of each leaf with the content of the same leaf in the previous release. Any leaf containing changed content is marked for inclusion in the release.

The following rules apply when determining the changed leaf set:

- The content and rules defined within any associated document schema, or internal and external DTD subset is ignored;
- Tag attributes, if present, are compared in lexicographic order;
- Empty elements are compared as a start tag / end tag pair;
- Whitespace within attribute values is normalized;
- Character references are normalised;
- References to **ISO 8879 entities** are resolved to an equivalent Unicode code point value;
- Changes within XML content referenced via entities are ignored;
- Changes within comments and processing instructions are ignored.

White space is only regarded as significant if it follows non white space content declared at the same tag level. All other white space is ignored.

Note:

Some aspects of **canonicalization** may not be applied to tags that declare a namespace.

11.3.9 Output page comparison

When comparing two pages, TopLeaf looks at sequences of text, rules and graphics within a page **difference area** defined in the **Layout Editor**.

Two pages are considered equal when they contain the same content in the page difference area, and each piece of content is at the same vertical and horizontal positions on both pages.

Graphics are considered to be equal if the filename parts (ie. excluding the folder path) of their paths are equal. The contents of the graphic files are not tested. One way to ensure that TopLeaf

tracks changes within graphic images is to include some form of versioning information along with the reference to the graphic (for example, the name of the graphic could include the graphic version number).

Color is not considered when comparing text and rules.

Hyperlink information (jumps and targets) is ignored during comparison.

11.3.10 Partition releases

A partition release is defined when a partition is first created and then each time you create a new **update**. Each release is stored within a partition release folder. The release folder contains a copy of the rendered output pages and a copy of all images referenced from those pages. Releases for **full looseleaf** partitions and **copy partitions** also include a copy of the document source content.

While a partition can define up to 999 releases, only the last two — corresponding to the update release and the published release — are directly accessible from the TopLeaf workstation and TopLeaf API. Full looseleaf partition and **change pages** partitions must contain at least two partition releases.

In the TopLeaf workstation, the maximum number of versions stored within a partition is set by the value of the **Keep releases** partition property. The TopLeaf API **Pack partition** function can be used to reduce the number of releases stored within a partition to a preferred minimum.

11.3.11 Page assembly

Page timeout interval

The typesetting engine will force an error exit if any individual page is not assembled within the page assembly timeout interval. The default timeout interval is 180 seconds. You may need to **increase the timeout** interval if your TopLeaf stylesheet processes a large number of mappings, for example if your style sheet loads a included Xref table before rendering the content of the first page.

Page output layering order

Each page generated by TopLeaf may contain any or all of the following components:

- Filled regions;
- Images;
- Ruled lines;
- Text characters.

When TopLeaf is requested to print or create a PDF for a page, these components are processed in a fixed order. Text characters will always be rendered last, so they will appear on top of other content.

11.3.12 Fonts

Type 1 fonts

Type 1 fonts are only partially supported on Windows Vista and Windows 7. To install a Type 1 font, you will need a PFM and PFB file for the font. Both files must be present within the Windows Font folder. Note that Windows XP will automatically create a PFM file when you install a Type 1 font, but Windows Vista and Windows 7 do not. If possible, it is recommended that you convert to the more modern **TrueType** format to make these fonts available for use in TopLeaf. Contact **support@turnkey.com.au** if you required additional information.

OpenType fonts

OpenType fonts are only partially supported. If you choose to use these fonts you must test that they work correctly and have the character set that you require. Turn-Key Systems accepts no responsibility for problems caused by the use of OpenType fonts.

11.3.13 Images

Bitmap images in SVG images

An SVG image can contain embedded bitmap images. TopLeaf supports the PNG and JPEG formats for embedded images, as required by the SVG 1.1 recommendation. Using other formats for embedded bitmaps may cause PDF creation to fail.

TIFF images

Not all TIFF image formats are supported. As a workaround, convert the image to an alternative format (for example, PNG).

11.4 Known issues

This section describes application specific issues you may need to be aware of. If you encounter a problem not covered in this chapter, please send details to **support@turnkey.com.au**.

11.4.1 Repository

Common drive letter

TopLeaf resolves repository paths into a standard Windows pathname including drive letter. Users accessing the repository across a network will experience problems if they use a different drive letter or folder path to access the root level of a shared TopLeaf repository.

Workaround: always access a shared TopLeaf repository using a fixed drive letter and/or folder path.

Repository folder name

The TopLeaf repository is a directory hierarchy beginning with a single root folder. The location of the repository is set in [File » Preferences](#) tab.

On Windows systems, a TopLeaf repository folder name may include space characters, but when this occurs, the TopLeaf API will reference the repository folder using the equivalent Windows 8.3 short file name. On Unix systems, the repository folder name can not include space characters.

Page comparison

The pages generated for the initial release of a **full looseleaf** or **change pages** partition reference embedded graphics using absolute file paths. As a consequence, users accessing the repository across a network will experience problems when output differencing these pages.

Workaround: ensure that all images referenced in an initial release are accessible from a common absolute folder path.

11.4.2 Publication stylesheets

There is a known problem when a publication contains looseleaf and non-looseleaf partitions that share TopLeaf stylesheets created by the Map, Notes, and Header & Footer managers.

The fault occurs when a non-looseleaf tag mapping requests a forced end of page. If the stylesheet is subsequently used to process a looseleaf partition, the end of page request generates an error.

Workaround: Do not create publications that contain looseleaf and non-looseleaf partitions.

11.4.3 Undoing changes to style sheets

There is a known problem when undoing changes made to TopLeaf stylesheets created by the Map, Notes, and Header & Footer managers and where the stylesheets are shared by more than one partition.

The fault occurs if you make stylesheet alterations using one partition and then open another partition and try to undo the stylesheet changes. The problem occurs because the undo state is held as a property of a partition, and not as a property of the style sheet.

Workaround: Do not make style sheet alterations using one partition and then open another partition and try to undo the style sheet changes.

11.4.4 Full looseleaf

Graphics

References to graphics are considered to be unchanged if the filename parts (ie. excluding the folder path) of their paths are equal. This can mean that a leaf that references a changed image will not be detected as changed unless another, possibly unrelated change to that leaf occurs, or the leaf is manually included within a release. You can ensure that TopLeaf tracks changes within graphic images by including versioning information along with the reference to the graphic.

Custom tables

By default, TopLeaf associates the document content consumed when constructing a **custom table** row with the rendered custom table row. If the content of a custom table row is emitted from a tag positioned immediately before a leaf boundary, use the command `<table-nextrow leaf-count="no" />` to force TopLeaf to associate any consumed content with the *next* rendered object (this may not necessarily be the custom table row).

Renaming partitions

You must *never* rename a full looseleaf partition after publishing the first issue (called the *mainwork*). When the mainwork is published, the name of the partition is effectively frozen — no further changes are permitted.

11.4.5 Custom content

Use of ^ in custom content

The use of the ^ (Unicode U+005E) character is not permitted within custom content. Attempting to do so will result in a character entity being substituted for the offending character.

Workaround: use the `^` entity.

Use of > in custom content

The use of the > (Unicode U+003E) character is not permitted within custom content. Attempting to do so will result in a character entity being substituted for the offending character.

Workaround: use the `>` entity.

11.4.6 Paragraphs

Merging paragraphs

A request to **merge with following paragraph** signals that an end tag and the immediately following content should be processed within the same paragraph. The merge request will be ignored if the following content:

- **cancels the merge**;
- applies a **page change**;
- inserts a **content break**;
- identifies the end of a **leaf run** or the start of a **leaf group**;
- declares a table, table row, or table cell;
- **starts a box** or inserts a **horizontal rule**.

11.4.7 Tables

Table spacing

If a table is positioned immediately within a **box**, then the vertical space above the table is determined by the sum of the box style **top text indent** and the **above space** declared by the current table style. Otherwise, the vertical space above the table is the larger of the **above space** declared by the current table style and any pending **inter-paragraph space**.

Table headers

The outermost table header is automatically repeated at the top of each column or page boundary that occurs within the scope of a table.

Row styling within table headers and vertical spans

When rendering a multi-row table header, or within rows containing table cells that span more than one row, TopLeaf applies a built-in **transform** to the table header or spanned content before processing the rows as a single unit. Only the first row in this unit is used for styling purposes; mappings for the other rows are ignored.

For example, the following CALS table declares a vertical span:

```
<table><tgroup cols="2"><tbody>
  <row outputclass="red"><entry>A</entry><entry
  morerows="1">B</entry></row>
  <row outputclass="blue"><entry>C</entry></row>
</tbody></tgroup></table>
```

The **row** mapping sets the background color using the **outputclass** attribute. In this case the entire table will have a red background color, because the mapping for the second row element is ignored.

Cell occurrence

It is not possible to map table cell **occurrence** within multi-row table headers or within rows containing table cells that span more than one row.

11.4.8 Boxes

Box margins

The placement rules applied to a box are defined by the current margins and the content immediately adjacent to the top and bottom of the box. This may not always give the expected result.

Consider the following data:

```
<doc>
  <box>
    <item><label>1.</label>First.</item>
    <item><label>2.</label>Second.</item>
  </box>
</doc>
```

If the mapping for `<item>` sets a left margin, the box drawn by the `<box>` mapping will not enclose the label content:



To solve this problem, emit some content in the pre-content box of the mapping for `<box>`. For example, a custom marker containing a non-breaking space, with the custom mapping setting a small font size.

Box spacing

If a box begins with tabular content, then the vertical space above the box is determined by the box style **above spacing**. Otherwise, the vertical space above the box is the larger of the **above space** declared by the current box style and any pending **inter-paragraph space**.

Nested boxes

The restriction that the only valid box nesting is an unbreakable within a breakable is difficult to enforce. Attempts to circumvent this restriction usually give rise to unpredictable effects and can abort the typesetting run. The typesetting engine will generate a non-fatal error if the calculated vertical offset for the start of a breakable box and an unbreakable box is identical.

Breakable boxes

The following restrictions apply to breakable boxes:

- Breakable boxes cannot be used within unbreakable boxes.
- Breakable boxes cannot be used within table cells.
- Breakable boxes cannot be used within fixed blocks.
- If a box does break, the frame may not extend all the way to the bottom of the page.

Fixed block box frames and fill patterns

The following restriction applies to fixed block frames and fill patterns:

- If a fixed block mapping applies a box or fill pattern, then the associated fixed block must emit content before the box or fill is displayed. The simplest way to add non-visible content to a fixed block is to declare a non-breaking space (** **) within the fixed block custom content.

Header & Footer boxed content

The depth of a box generated by a Header/Footer mapping is determined by the height of the header or footer defined in the page layout, not by what it contains. If the height of a header or footer block exceeds the depth of the content in that block, TopLeaf will vertically centre the content within the block.

11.4.9 Fonts

Font characteristics

The *Frame*, *Reverse* and *Overbar* cannot be applied to the content emitted by the following commands:

- `<folio/>`
- `<link-folio/>`

11.4.10 Images

Filename characters

Images with filenames that contain characters outside of the range U+0020 to U+007F cannot be referenced from Windows TopLeaf installations.

11.4.11 PDF

Link destinations

The value **#IMPLIED** cannot be used as a PDF link destination. TopLeaf does not distinguish between this value and a missing attribute.

URI schemes

The TopLeaf PDF builder recognizes the following URI schemes when processing references to external link targets:

- **http:**
- **https:**
- **mailto:**
- **file:**
- **ftp:**

11.4.12 Secondary output transformations

Typefaces and Fonts

The font characteristics: *reverse* and *frame* are not supported.

If a **typeface selection scheme** is referenced in a mapping the converter will use it to determine the typeface to use. For HTML secondary transforms, all of the typeface names are used in the CSS style. For RTF transforms, only the one typeface name is used.

Images

The supplied output plugins for the secondary output transformations do not attempt any significant processing of images. In general, images are included as is, so properties such as rotation will not be honored. The image may not appear at all if it is in a format that the output medium does not support. For example, TIFF graphics generally won't appear in HTML output because most browsers don't support this format.

The architecture of the transformation mechanism allows additional or modified plugins to be created to modify images as required. See the *Transform Manual* in the Programmer Documentation for more information.

Tables

Nested tables are only partially supported in secondary output transformations.

Some of the advanced features of CALS tables, such as multiple **tggroup** elements and **entrytbl** elements, cannot be represented in HTML or RTF tables.

Some table formatting such as rule colors and background shading are not supported in all output formats.

TopLeaf does not support the use of HTML and CALS table models within the same document.

Headers and Footers

Headers and Footers are not written to secondary outputs.

Sidenotes

Sidenotes are not written to secondary outputs.

Footnotes

When images are included in the text of a footnote, the RTF produced by the secondary output transformation causes some versions of Microsoft Word to crash. The RTF can be successfully read by WordPad and OpenOffice.

Fills

Fills (dot fill, space fill and rule fill) are not supported in HTML output.

RTF supports fills subject to some restrictions. Only one type of fill is supported in a paragraph (for example, a paragraph cannot contain both space and rule fills). RTF output will contain at most one fill object per line, unlike TopLeaf paginated output which may contain several fills in a line.

Text Direction

Right-to-left text is not supported.

11.4.13 Running heads

Running heads are cancelled when the **page type** changes. As a consequence, their use is not recommended for layouts that create multiple page types on a page (for example, mixing single and double column on the same page).

11.4.14 Automatic link targets

The **generated content** files contain markup that can be used to create a **link** to the content that produced the generated item. If no appropriate target can be found for the link an automatic target is created. The name for an automatic target is constructed by using the input file name and the number of tags that have been processed. In order for automatic targets to work correctly the following must be satisfied:

- The name of the input file must not change from one composition pass to the next.
- The number of tags processed must be the same in the pass that creates the generated file and the pass that read it. Additional composition passes may be required to satisfy this requirement.

The use of automatic link targets should be avoided when using **output page differencing** in a looseleaf publication.

These restrictions can be avoided by creating explicit target identifiers in the **Content tab** of the mappings. An explicit target will be used in preference to an automatic target if it occurs at the same vertical position on the page. One way to ensure this is to create the explicit target in the same mapping that produces the generated content.

Another way to avoid the need for automatic targets is to include the link information in the generated content itself. For example, to include a target in a table of contents entry you could put the following in the custom content of the mapping for a title:

```
<Toc1><Target id="{LevelId}"/><content/></Toc1>
```

where the **%Toc1** mapping assigns its content to a top-level TOC entry and the **LevelId** variable contains the identifier for the level. The mapping that processes the level should create an explicit target for the TOC link to use.

To assist with avoiding problems related to automatic targets, an **idtype** attribute with value **auto** is added to each element in a generated file that refers to an automatic target.

11.4.15 Temporary files folder

TopLeaf references your default temporary files folder to hold temporary files. If you are running TopLeaf via a system service (for example, from a Java based TopLeaf client/server application) then TopLeaf may fail to start if it cannot locate the temporary files folder, or does not have permission to create one or more temporary files within that folder.

Workaround:

1. Create a temporary files folder for TopLeaf (for example, at **C:\temp**)
2. Declare the environment variable **TMPDIR** path with the value of this temporary files folder

12. Third Party software requirements

This chapter lists details for features of TopLeaf that require the installation of one or more third party software applications.

A Java™ runtime must be installed in order to use TopLeaf. The location of the Java runtime is set in the TopLeaf workstation [Preferences dialog](#).

A copy of Java™ is not included in the TopLeaf distribution.

12.1 GhostScript

You must install a copy of [GhostScript](#) if you intend to view or print EPS or PDF images.

There are a number of versions of GhostScript available. Releases of GPL GhostScript made prior to 2004 were part of the GNU project and were titled GNU Ghostscript (GNU version 6 or higher is required).

A copy of GhostScript is not included in the TopLeaf distribution.

12.1.1 GhostScript location

The location of GhostScript is determined in the following way.

- If the environment variable **TLGSPATH** is defined, its value specifies the full path to a folder containing the GhostScript executable. You must declare this variable if you want TopLeaf to select a specific version of GhostScript and more than one version of GhostScript is installed on your system.

For example: **TLGSPATH="C:\Program Files\gs\gs8.54\bin"**

Otherwise, TopLeaf will attempt to locate GhostScript by searching the registry:

- If GPL GhostScript is installed, TopLeaf will use the registry key **HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\GPL Ghostscript** to resolve the full path to the GhostScript executable.
- Otherwise, if AFPL GhostScript is installed, TopLeaf will use the registry key **HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\AFPL Ghostscript** to resolve the full path to the GhostScript executable.
- Otherwise, if GNU GhostScript is installed, TopLeaf will use the registry key **HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\GNU Ghostscript** to resolve the full path to the GhostScript executable.

12.2 EPS image files

TopLeaf requires [GhostScript](#) to be installed in order to process EPS images.

For PDF output you can use an image filter in the [pdf profile](#) to use a different EPS converter.

TopLeaf will process EPS image files that conform to the document structuring conventions described in the [Encapsulated PostScript File Format Specification](#). To be considered a conforming EPS image, an EPS file *must* describe a single page document that fully conforms to the [PostScript Document Structuring Conventions Specification](#) version 3.0 or later. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that any referenced EPS image conforms to these specifications. EPS images that do not conform to these specifications cannot be processed by TopLeaf.

At the very least, this means that a referenced EPS image must include:

1. An EPS **document prolog** that declares the following DSC header comments:

```
%!PS-Adobe-3.0 EPSF-3.0
```

%%BoundingBox:llx lly urx ury

2. An EPS **document script** that declares a complete representation of the document page.
3. An end of a document **%%EOF** comment that marks the end of the EPS content.

12.2.1 Calculating the size of an EPS image

The **%%BoundingBox** declares a rectangular clipping region that fully encloses the content defined by the EPS image. TopLeaf uses the bounding box to determine the EPS image size.

12.2.2 Unexpected font substitution within EPS graphics

When you include an EPS image created from another application (for example, Adobe PageMaker, Illustrator, or QuarkXPress) TopLeaf may substitute fonts in the EPS graphic with another font such as Courier or Helvetica.

This can occur if the EPS image references a font that is not installed on your system. In general, you can avoid this problem by including all of the fonts required by the EPS image within the EPS file, or by converting the text in the EPS to outlines.

12.3 PDF image files

12.3.1 Restrictions

TopLeaf cannot read PDF documents that are encrypted or otherwise protected by a DRM (Digital Rights Management) system.

Only the page content of an imported PDF is copied. Annotations (bookmarks, hyperlinks, comments etc.) are ignored.

12.3.2 Calculating the size of a PDF image

If you decide to include PDF graphic images within a document processed by TopLeaf, it is important to remember that only the first page of the PDF can be included, and that you may need to take steps to include the appropriate part of the page.

To select the appropriate part of the image you can use one of the following *boundary boxes* that can be defined on a PDF page.

The *media box* defines the boundaries of the physical medium on which the page is to be printed. It may include any extended area surrounding the finished page for bleed, printing marks, or other such purposes. It may also include areas close to the edges of the medium that cannot be marked because of physical limitations of the output device. Content falling outside this boundary can safely be discarded without affecting the meaning of the PDF file.

The *crop box* defines the region to which the contents of the page are to be clipped (cropped) when displayed or printed. Unlike the other boxes, the crop box has no defined meaning in terms of physical page geometry or intended use; it merely imposes clipping on the page contents. However, in the absence of additional information, the crop box determines how the page's contents are to be positioned on the output medium. The default value is the page's media box.

The *art box* is an arbitrary region that can be used to identify the important part of the page.

The following list describes the precedence rules that TopLeaf uses to determine the dimensions of an embedded PDF image:

- If the *art box* dimensions are defined, then Topleaf will use these to determine the extent of the page content;
- If the *crop box* dimensions are defined, then Topleaf will use these to determine the extent of the page content;

- otherwise, TopLeaf will use the *media box* dimensions to determine the extent of the page content.

You can use the `<image-properties/>` directive to override this behavior and select a preferred PDF image bounding box.

Unfortunately, there is no hard and fast rule as to which of these boundary types is the most suitable for a particular PDF image. Often, the media box specifies the target page dimensions (for example, A4 or Legal), this means that the selected image dimensions can include a considerable amount of surrounding white space, whereas the crop box *usually* describes the portion of the page that contains the true page content.

It must be noted that the crop box and art box are optional PDF features that may not be present in all PDF files. In some cases, the TopLeaf PDF image processor can produce unexpected image clipping when rendering PDF images that rely on the PDF *art box* to declare the dimensions of the true page content.

It is the user's responsibility to ensure that if an embedded PDF image declares any of these boundary types, then the declared dimensions properly describe the portion of the page that contains the true page content. If rendering a PDF image produces an unexpected result, use an alternative scalable graphic format, such as EPS or SVG.

12.4 SVG image files

SVG content is processed using software developed by the [Apache Software Foundation](#). TopLeaf automatically converts references to external SVG content to bitmap images in the page preview and when creating print output.

For PDF output you can use an image filter in the [pdf profile](#) to use a different SVG converter.

SVG content must be referenced from separately stored SVG document files. TopLeaf does not support the direct processing of embedded SVG content.

SVG image processing requires that a Java™ runtime be installed. The location of the Java runtime is set in the TopLeaf workstation [Preferences dialog](#)

Processing an SVG image can require a large amount of memory, particularly when converting to a bitmap version with a large resolution (dpi). If conversion fails, try increasing the limit on available memory using the [preferences](#) or the `TLJAVA_ARGS` environment variable.

12.4.1 Calculating the size of an SVG image

During composition, TopLeaf reads the SVG to determine its size. It scans the file for an `<svg>` tag that either has both the `width` and `height` attributes, or has the `viewBox` attribute. Note that if you have nested svg elements and the outermost one does not specify a size, TopLeaf will calculate an incorrect size. SVG images of this form are not suitable for use by TopLeaf.

If both the `width` and `height` attributes are present, TopLeaf will use them to calculate a **natural size** for the graphic (see [Image Size](#) in the Mapping Guide). For this purpose, any unit that does not have a constant size (for example, pixels) will be treated as points. This means that “72px”, “72pt” and “1in” all produce the same result (one inch).

When either or both of the `width` and `height` attributes are missing, TopLeaf uses the width and height values in the `viewBox` attribute. These are always interpreted as a number of points. The “x” and “y” components of the `viewBox` value are ignored.

12.5 PDFlib+PDI

Please refer to the legacy PDF builder documentation. This can be downloaded from <http://www.turnkey.com.au/tksweb/PDFs/TL7LG.pdf>.

13. Glossary

alignment

The horizontal placement of text in a **paragraph**. The four available alignments are: **left**, **right**, **center** and **justify**. TopLeaf provides two additional alignments (**inside** and **outside**) for **fixed blocks** only.

ancestor

In the **XML hierarchy**, any **element** which contains the current element.

API

Application Programming Interface. A mechanism by which third party applications can access many of the functions of the TopLeaf typesetting system.

attribute

A means of conveying additional information or **metadata** within a **tag**. Each attribute consists of a **name="value"** pair (e.g. `<emph style="bold">`).

baseline

A notional line on which characters and images are positioned.



binding

A typesetting action which forces a group of lines to be rendered together on the same page/column. If there is insufficient vertical space available then the whole group must be taken over to the following page/column.

block

Rendered text corresponding to the content of a **block element** with **paragraph** breaks above and below. May be empty and may contain sub-blocks. See also **fixed block**.

block element

An **element** whose content is rendered as one or more **paragraphs**.

booklist

A file maintained within a TopLeaf **partition** containing links to the source XML for that partition.

box

A region of text surrounded by a rectangular frame. The appearance, position, shading and other aspects of the box can be controlled via **mappings**.

CALS

TopLeaf supports the CALS **table model** via a set of predefined **mappings** for tags such as `<tgroup>`, `<colspec>`, `<row>` etc.

cell

The lowest level container of a **table**. Each **row** consists of a number of cells. Cells are marked with the `<entry>` element in **CALS** tables, while **HTML** tables use `<th>` and `<td>` for header and data cells respectively.

change pages

Along with **full looseleaf**, one of the looseleaf methods supported by TopLeaf. Change pages is designed to minimize the size of the final document after each update is applied and is normally driven by changes to the printed output.

change bar

A margin rule set to indicate recently added/changed material.

child

In the **XML hierarchy**, an **element** which is immediately enclosed by the current element.

command

A construct similar to an XML **element**, which can be used within **custom content** to access TopLeaf functions not available via the dialogs. For example:

```
<rule width="2pc"/>
```

content model

In TopLeaf this term refers to how **whitespace** in the content of an element is handled. Available models are **Element** (ignore whitespace); **Mixed** (collapse whitespace to a single space); and **Preserve** (honor all whitespace).

crop box

A crop box is intended for publications where the final size of the paper is smaller than the paper that is initially printed. In other words, the paper is cropped after printing to remove the unwanted parts

CSS

Cascading Style Sheets: a form of **stylesheet** used widely on the Internet. TopLeaf has some features in common with CSS, but CSS is directed towards screen display rather than **paginated output**.

custom content

Content specified in a **mapping** to be generated immediately before or after the normal **element content**. It can contain text, **custom markers** and/or **commands**.

custom marker

A construct similar to an XML **element**, which can be used within **custom content** to augment the markup present in a document. It can be mapped just like a normal element. Custom markers are defined by the user and generated as required to trigger appropriate actions in the typesetting, but have no effect on the actual **source document**.

custom table

A custom table is a structure that maps individual elements directly into a tabular format that conforms to the underlying publication table model.

data area

An area of the output page which contains **data columns**, and their associated **sidenotes** and **margin rules**.

data column(s)

One or more rectangular blocks on the output page which is filled by material from the **input stream** along with any required **notes**. Specifically excludes **fixed blocks**.

data flow / input stream

The natural flow of text and **markup** as the **source document** is processed. The term **input stream** refers to the XML source material being fed to TopLeaf, while **data flow** is the corresponding flow of material into columns of output. In a typical output page there are three classes of material:

- Normal text and graphics, which appear in the input stream and are rendered in the same order in the output data columns.
- **Notes** (e.g. footnotes, floats), which appear in the input stream but whose presence/placement is determined by the output layout (e.g. where a column ends). Thus they affect, and are affected by, the data flow but are not part of it.
- Material which is neither part of the input stream nor of the data flow (e.g. **fixed blocks**).

In addition to the above, TopLeaf has facilities for suppressing, saving and re-using material from the input stream. This allows the order of material in the output document to vary significantly from

the source document if required, and also allows the creation of secondary documents (e.g. table of contents, index).

decipoint

One tenth of a **point** (720dp = 1 **inch** = 2.54cm). This is the default unit for **measures** in TopLeaf.

derived change

Occurs when a **looseleaf** page is included in a release due to a change to the other page of the same **leaf** or in the publication stylesheet.

descendant

In the **XML hierarchy**, any **element** contained within the current element.

differencing

Comparing the same page from different releases of the same publication, in order to locate new, changed or deleted material. TopLeaf allows differencing to be limited to a specific **difference area** of the page. This means that changes to headers that declare a release date will not be identified as different.

DITA

Darwin Information Typing Architecture. A form of XML markup in which documents are built up from small reusable topics.

DTD

Document Type Definition. A set of rules which specify what an **SGML** or **XML** document may contain. The DTD defines the **elements** and **entities** which may be used in a document and it also controls the order and context in which the elements may be used.

element

In **XML**, an element is a specific portion of a document. It consists of a start **tag**, an end tag, and any enclosed **content**.

element content

The text and/or sub-elements contained within an **element**.

em

A printers' measure equal to the **point size** of the current font. The width of the em rule and em space characters.

entity

In **XML** an entity is a named object in the form **&name**; Entities can denote characters or files to be included at that point in the document.

error

An abnormal condition arising during typesetting which may lead to some source material *not being rendered* (e.g. graphic file not found). See also **fatal error** and **warning**.

facing pages

Two consecutive pages viewed side by side as in an open book. Compare with **leaf**.

fatal error

An abnormal condition arising during typesetting which causes the *immediate termination* of the job (e.g. *source document not found*). See also **error** and **warning**.

filing instructions

A set of instructions for filing an **update pack** into a **looseleaf** publication, indicating which existing **leaves** are to be removed and which new leaves are to be inserted.

file entity

An **entity** which refers to a file other than the **source document**. The inclusion of a file entity normally indicates that the content of that file should be incorporated into the **input stream** at that point.

fill

A group of spaces, dashes, dots etc. which fills out a line of text. For example:

Steak Dianne \$21.50

fixed block

The area designated for material placed in a predefined position on the page, outside the normal **data columns**. Fixed blocks can contain material extracted from the **input stream** for the current pages (e.g. **folio** and **telltales**). Fixed blocks may take the form of **headers** or **footers**, but can appear anywhere on the page. The position of the block is fixed, the content is variable.

float

A collection of text/graphics whose rendering is deferred until the top or bottom of a data column. A typical use is for Figures, consisting of a graphic and title. Figures are normally printed at the top or bottom of the column to avoid disrupting the flow of the surrounding text.

font

A style of rendering printed characters. A combination of **typeface**, **size** and **style** effects such as bold, italic, underline.

(font) style

Variations which can be made to a **typeface** to invoke a specific **font**. The most common styles are **bold** and **italic**. Other styles include **condensed** (narrow characters) and **black** (super-bold).

footer

A **fixed block** positioned below the **data columns**.

footnote

A block of text printed below, and generally on the same page as, a **reference point** within a text **column**. TopLeaf supports both *column footnotes* which are printed at the end of the data column containing the reference point, and *page footnotes* which occupy the full width at the bottom of the text.

frame

A set of four **rules** (left, right, top and bottom) surrounding a **box** or **table**.

full looseleaf

Along with **change pages**, one of the **looseleaf** methods supported by TopLeaf. Full looseleaf minimizes the size of each **update pack** and is driven by changes to the source document content.

full release

In looseleaf publishing, a **release** pack which includes the whole document rather than just the updated leaves. This is the norm for electronic delivery, but may also be produced for a printed document.

graphic

An image which is rendered as part of a document.

GUI

Graphical User Interface. TopLeaf workstation can be used to design and change TopLeaf stylesheets and to manage **looseleaf** documents.

hanging indent

A style of **indent** in which the first line of a paragraph starts further left than the other lines.

header

A **fixed block** positioned above the **data columns**.

HTML (tables)

TopLeaf supports the **HTML table model** using a set of predefined **mappings** for tags such as **<thead>**, **<col>**, **<tr>** etc.

hyphenation

The action of breaking a long word over two lines to avoid short lines or excessive **whitespace**. TopLeaf includes hyphenation rules for most European languages. It also supports user supplied exception dictionaries for control of individual words and for specialist terminology (e.g. medical, legal). East Asian languages such as Chinese and Japanese do not use hyphenation as such, but do have special word breaking rules.

inch

One inch equals 2.54 cm, 72 **points**, or 720 **decipoints**.

index

A set of references to a document grouped alphabetically or by subject. TopLeaf has facilities for generating indexes automatically.

inheritance

The process whereby the typesetting **properties** of an element can be passed on to its **descendants**.

inline element

An element which is rendered as part of a **paragraph**, but which does not itself trigger the start or end of a paragraph (e.g. a hyperlink or italicized phrase).

input stream

See **data flow**.

intentionally blank

A filler page printed on the back of a leaf which contains only enough content to fill the front page. May be completely blank or contain a printed page number and headers and footers.

interword space

As a *style property*, a range giving the minimum and maximum space inserted between words before attempting to calculate a word break. In an *output document*, the actual space inserted between words. In unjustified text, this will be the minimum defined above. In justified text this will normally be somewhere between the minimum and maximum values. If possible the system will use techniques such as **hyphenation** to avoid exceeding the maximum acceptable space.

ISO

International Standards Organization. A body responsible for setting global standards in many fields. These standards are typically referred to by a number prefixed by *ISO*, *ISO/IEC* etc.

ISO 8859 — a family of 8-bit character sets that cover mainly the European languages. *ISO 8859-1* (Latin1) is probably the most widely used — it covers most of the Western European languages.

ISO 8879:1986 — SGML

ISO/IEC 10646 — Unicode

justify

A *line* of text is (fully) justified when it is spread out enough to reach both left and right margins. See also **alignment**. TopLeaf justifies text by assigning an appropriate value to the **interword space**.

A page is *vertically justified* when the **data columns** run from the top of the page to the bottom. TopLeaf adds extra space between paragraphs and/or between lines to achieve this effect.

label

A small text fragment (such as a bullet, number or graphic), usually offset from an associated block of text and serving to identify that block.

label element

An **element** whose content is set as a **label** which automatically attaches to the following **paragraph**.

layout (editor)

The general shape of a page, including paper size, **print area**, **fixed blocks**, **data columns** etc. TopLeaf provides the **Layout Editor** dialog to control these properties.

leading

[Pron: *ledding*] A measure of line spacing, expressed in TopLeaf as the vertical distance between **baselines** of two successive text lines.



It is common practice to add extra leading to open out the text. Thus a document set in Arial 12/13 has a 12 point font set with 13 point leading. A document set in Arial 12/24 would be double-spaced (vertically).

leaf

A printed sheet of paper, as in the leaves of a book. Normally printed with the odd-numbered page on the front and the following even numbered page on the back. Single sided leaves can also be created if necessary.

leaf group

In a **full looseleaf** publication, a leaf group identifies a set of adjacent leaves separated from another leaf group by a gap in the folio numbering sequence. Leaf groups are usually associated with a document structural unit. Leaf groups help minimize the number of generated point pages by reserving a leaf folio range into which the group may expand if required.

leaf indicator

A user defined string variable that can be used to hold **metadata** or typesetting controls for individual **leaves**.

leaf section

In a **full looseleaf** publication, a leaf section identifies a set of adjacent leaves that share a common section identifier. A section based leaf numbering scheme permits the division of the leaf numbering range into any number of separate sections, with each section containing any number of leaves.

legacy partition

A TopLeaf partition that declares content that is neither XML or SGML, or uses a component of TopLeaf that has been **superseded**.

line indent

An effect where the first or last line begins or ends at a different point to the remainder of the **paragraph**. See also **margin**.

link

A pointer to another part of the document or even an arbitrary location on the internet. In printed documents usually just a text fragment such as *see section 3.1*. In web pages, **PDF** files and other electronic documents is usually a hyperlink which, when clicked, takes the user to the indicated location.

link line

A line of the form **Next page is NNN** printed on the last page before a **gap** in page numbering.

list-item element

An **element** whose content is rendered as part of a list and which generates its own **label**.

live pages list

Also known as **List of Effective Pages**. A list showing the current release number (or date etc) for every page or leaf in a **looseleaf** document.

log file

A file generated by the TopLeaf composition engine which gives by default a list of pages set, errors encountered, and job statistics. If debug mode is selected the log file contains much more detailed information.

looseleaf

A form of publishing where, rather than printing complete revisions of a document, the publisher produces only those **leaves** which have changed since the previous **release**. The recipient removes the old leaves and inserts the revised leaves. To facilitate this process the document is normally stored in a ring or lever-arch binder.

TopLeaf supports two different looseleaf models: **full looseleaf** and **change pages**.

Looseleaf publishing involves a number of complex processes: retention of leaf boundaries; correctly identifying differences; generation of **point pages**; consolidation of multiple revisions; **page gapping**; production of **filing instructions** etc.

mainwork

The initial (full) **release** of a **looseleaf** document before any **updates** are applied.

mapping

The association of a set of typesetting actions with a particular **element** or **custom marker**. The fundamental trigger for how TopLeaf renders each part of a document. For example the mapping for an **<emph>** element may simply be *Set Italic On*.

margin

The left and right margin settings determine how far from the edges of a column the text of a **paragraph** is set (see also **line indent**). The term **Page margin** is similarly used to define how far the printable area should be set in from the edges of the page.

margin rule

A vertical rule running beside all or part of a **data column**.

marker

A **tag** or **custom marker**. Each marker can have an associated **mapping**.

markup

Metadata interspersed with text which serves to identify the structure and/or formatting of that text.

measure

A numerical value expressing a height or width. TopLeaf accepts measures in **points**, **decipoints**, **picas**, **inches**, centimeters, and millimeters.

merge

The act of physically combining two adjacent **paragraphs** into one output paragraph.

metadata

Data which is not part of the printed text of a document, but which indicates structure, format, or other relevant information about the text (such as creation date or index keywords). Metadata in **XML** typically appears in the form of **tags**, **attributes** and **processing instructions**.

mixed content

XML content which can contain text as well as elements.

newline

A generic term for a line end in the **source document**. May be a CR (carriage return) character, LF (line feed), or CR/LF. The **content model** determines if these characters are honored or ignored.

notes

The collective term for **footnotes**, **sidenotes**, **floats** and **running heads**. Notes appear within **data columns**.

orientation

The aspect ratio of the page when reading normal text columns: either **portrait** (like most books) or **landscape** (like most computer screens).

output document

The fully rendered output of a typesetting run. Can be accessed as printed pages or as a **PDF** document.

page

A single printed page or electronic equivalent. There are normally two pages per leaf (sheet of paper) printed front and back.

page gapping

Deliberately introduced breaks in the page numbering of a **looseleaf** publication so that new material has an area to expand into. This may reduce the need to create **point pages**. For example it might be decided to start new sections on every hundred page boundary, so that a section ending on page 525 might immediately followed by a section starting at page 601. A **link line** is often used to inform the reader that the gapping is intentional.

page group

In **looseleaf** jobs, an unbroken sequence of consecutively numbered pages. A group may contain sequences of **point pages**. See **run**.

page number

Can refer to one of:

- **folio / page ID** — the number normally printed on the page and used to locate it in Tables of Contents etc. May be a simple number, or a string that reflects the document structure (e.g. **C-47**, **64.2.5**). Blank and title pages may have no visible folio, while preface material may have roman numbering (**i**, **ii**, **iii**...);
- **sequence number** — a number reflecting the order on which pages are produced, always a simple count (**1**, **2**, **3**...).

page type

The TopLeaf description of an output page layout, including **paper size**, **margins**, **headers and footers**, and placement of **data columns**.

pagination

The process whereby a stream of typeset text is divided into individual pages. Includes such aspects as page numbering, paragraph splitting, column management, footnote placement, generation of headers and footers etc.

paper size

The dimensions of the physical/virtual paper on which the output is rendered. The two most common sizes are **Letter** in the USA and **A4** elsewhere. TopLeaf supports a range of predefined sizes and also lets you define your own.

paragraph

In TopLeaf terminology, a non-empty area of text between two **block** boundaries. More simply a single physical paragraph with *no internal structure*. For example a **<para>** element containing an internal **<list>** with four simple items consists of six paragraphs: the pre-list text, each list item, and the post-list text, if any.

The difference between paragraphs and blocks is that blocks (which correspond to **block elements** in the source) nest just like elements do. They can be empty or contain any number of sub-blocks. Paragraphs on the other hand do not nest or overlap and cannot be empty. An **output document** can be considered as a series of paragraphs, one after the other.

Can paragraphs be identified in the source document? Yes, but not as easily as blocks. In the example, the last “paragraph” would be the text between the **</list>** and **</para>** tags.

parent

In the **XML hierarchy**, the (unique) **element** which immediately encloses the current element.

partition

In TopLeaf, a partition refers to a subdivision of a **publication** corresponding to a single output document. A partition is the basic document unit processed by TopLeaf.

partition indicator

A user defined string **variable** that can be used to hold metadata or typesetting controls for a **partition**.

partition link line

A **link line** that appears at the end of a document in a fixed block advising the start page number of the next **partition** (ie. the next document that makes up the publication).

PDF

Portable Document Format A standard, developed by Adobe, which allows **output documents** to be stored in **paginated** form. This preserves the physical appearance of the finished document, which can then be viewed using Acrobat Reader or printed as hard copy. TopLeaf uses its own PDF builder to create PDF files. However, you will still need a PDF reader (e.g. Acrobat TM) to view these files.

Perl

A **scripting language** developed by Larry Wall. The TopLeaf composition engine provides a set of commands for passing data to and from an embedded Perl interpreter.

phase

The current state of a **looseleaf** document within TopLeaf, one of **initial** (prior to first publication), **update** (currently being modified) or **published** (release completed and locked).

pica

[Pron: *pie-kah*] A printers' measure now accepted as 6pc = 1 **inch** = 2.54cm.

pixel

Short for *picture element*, a single dot on a screen. While images and web pages often use measurements in pixels, they are not suitable for the printed page as their physical size varies with the resolution of the display device. As a rough rule of thumb, 1 pixel = 1 **point** is a good starting value. However this simple conversion can give odd results when applied to hi-res images.

point

A printers' measure (72pt = 1 **inch** = 2.54cm). Font **sizes** are usually expressed in terms of points.

point size (type size)

An indication of the size of the characters in a specific **font**.

point pages

New pages (created in **full looseleaf** only) to be filed between consecutively numbered **leaves** in the current release. For example new leaf **6.1–6.2** would be filed between existing leaves **5–6** and **7–8**. Also called **stroke pages** if rendered as **6/1** rather than **6.1**. Other forms such as **6a-6b** are also possible. With double-sided leaves these pages always come immediately after the even numbered (back) page of the previous leaf.

print area

The area of a page within which all printed material appears. Controlled by the Layout Editor.

priority (of mappings)

A property of each mapping which causes that mapping to be selected ahead of mappings with lower priority.

processing instruction

A form of markup which, unlike elements, does not participate in the **XML hierarchy**. This allows it to be freely placed within a document to influence the processing at that point.

Has the form **<?TARG CONT?>** where:

- **TARG** is the *target* (ie. instruction name).
- **CONT** is the (optional) *content*. The content is fairly free-form. It can resemble one or more **attribute/value** pairs, or simply be an arbitrary text string.

Note that the declaration at the start of a typical XML document:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
```

has the form of a processing instruction, but is treated as a separate type of object during XML processing.

property

A generic term applied to any of the numerous TopLeaf settings available through the dialogs. Some properties (e.g. **Font Size**) are fully inherited, some (e.g. **Left Margin**) are inherited as computed values, and some (e.g. **Space Above**) must be explicitly set on every element that uses them.

publication

A TopLeaf repository level consisting of a number of **partitions**. The **stylesheets**, *DTD* etc. are normally stored at this level and used by all contained partitions.

publish

A TopLeaf **looseleaf** function which produces the final version of the current **release**, creates the **filing instructions** and live pages list, sets a change lock on the partition to prevent further changes, and stores a copy of the release as a basis for change tracking.

published phase

TopLeaf maintains each **looseleaf** partition in two **phases**, the **published phase** and the **update phase**. The published phase is locked against further change and ready to be **published**, as distinct from the update phase which is still in preparation.

reference point

The point in the text where a **footnote** or **sidenote** is triggered. Footnotes typically place an identifying index number or symbol at the reference point. Sidenotes do not, as their position indicates which line of text is referenced.

release

The state of a **looseleaf** document once an **update** has been published. The **initial release** (or **mainwork**) is the whole document as originally published. Each release normally has a unique label which appears on all leaves updated by that release.

release line

A line printed on each **leaf** of a **looseleaf release** which indicates when the page was published. Typically contains the release name/number or publication date.

rendering

In general, the action of converting a **source document** into a fully **paginated** human readable format appropriate for the delivery medium. We use the term *typesetting* to refer to the internal process of assembling lines of text into pages. Thus a typesetting run generates the output pages, which can then be *rendered* on-screen, as hard copy, or as a PDF file.

TopLeaf repository

A directory folder in which TopLeaf stores **publications**.

row

The intermediate level container of a **table**. Marked as **<row>** in CALS tables and **<tr>** in HTML. A table consists of a vertical set of rows each consisting of a horizontal set of **cells**.

rule

A horizontal or vertical straight line. A horizontal rule drawn above or below a text paragraph is sometimes called a **ruleoff**.

run (of pages)

In **looseleaf** publishing, a number of new pages to be inserted as part of a **release**, which will appear in the publication as a continuous set of pages and which, therefore, can all be inserted into the publication by following a single line of the **filing instructions**. See **page group**.

running head

A continuation heading which is printed at the top of a page or a data column to indicate that a recent heading is still in force at a particular level. Running heads (unlike **telltale**) appear within the main **data columns**. TopLeaf provides up to five levels of running heads. TopLeaf can also produce running feet, which are lines indicating that the material continues in the next page/column.

segment

A portion of a **page** which is set as a unit. For example, a change from single-column to double-column text on the same page requires a new segment to be commenced. Column footnotes will be printed immediately at any change of segment, whereas page footnotes always appear at the bottom of the page.

SGML

Standard Generalized Markup Language. A **markup** language, which was adopted as an international standard (ISO 8879:1986), for marking up documents in such a way as to be independent of the software which created or which processes the document. TopLeaf can process SGML data, but most markup is now in the form of **XML**.

sidenote

A word, phrase or reference number which is printed to the side of a data column adjacent to the **reference point**.

soft hyphen

A special character (Unicode U+00AD) which is normally invisible, but marks where a word can be broken between two lines. If this happens, the hyphen will appear at the end of the first line.

source (document)

An **XML** document which is being rendered by TopLeaf. The source document may consist of a number of files that optionally reference separate graphic files.

string

A fragment of text without internal **markup**.

stylesheet

One or more files which indicate how a **source document** is to be rendered. TopLeaf stylesheets are processed using the TopLeaf workstation or can be edited directly.

table

A rectangular grid in which data can be arranged in a series of **rows** and **cells**. TopLeaf supports both **CALS** and **HTML** table markup.

tag

In **XML** a tag is a unit of **markup** used to delimit **elements** within a document, and to convey **metadata** in the form of **attributes**. Tags come in three forms: the **start** tag **<name>**, the **end** tag **</name>** and the **empty** tag **<name />**. Attributes may be carried by both the start and empty forms thus **<name attr="value" />**.

tag-in-context

A tag name which includes some or all of the tag's **ancestors** (e.g. **/book/chapter/title**). Used to distinguish between different occurrences of the same tag name, say between a chapter title and a section title.

telltale

An indicator rendered within a fixed block once the content of the page is known. For example, a dictionary header like **aardvark–acumen** would be assembled from two telltales defining the first and last term on the page.

transform

A process whereby material from the **source document** is substantially modified and/or re-ordered prior to **rendering**. TopLeaf can perform some transformations on the fly using a **Perl extension**. Other rendering systems require a preliminary transformation phase, using systems such as **XSLT**.

typeface

A set of printable characters with a specific look and feel (e.g. Times New Roman, Arial, Palatino). Combines with **point size** and **style** to define a specific **font**.

type size

See **point size**.

Unicode

A **character coding system** for assigning a unique number to all of the characters used in human languages, plus mathematical and other useful symbols. Every character is also assigned a general category and subcategory. The general categories are: letter, mark, number, punctuation, symbol, or control (in other words a formatting or non-graphical character). All **XML** documents specify an encoding which maps the byte sequences in the document to a set of Unicode characters.

Unix/Linux

Operating systems widely used for servers and for automated applications. The TopLeaf **API** is available for both 64 bit Linux and Windows versions.

update

A set of changes made to one **release** of a **looseleaf** document in order to create the next release.

update pack

A set of printed pages required to update a **looseleaf** document from one release to the next. Normally also contains a set of **filing instructions** and possibly a **live pages list**.

update phase

In TopLeaf, the stage at which a looseleaf **release** is in preparation. See also **published phase**.

US-ASCII

An encoding scheme for representing characters as 7-bit values. Can only represent the standard Latin alphabet, numbers, punctuation, and controls such as tab and newline.

UTF-8

An encoding scheme for representing **Unicode** characters as 8-bit values. **US-ASCII** characters are represented as themselves, whereas non-standard characters are denoted by sequences of up to 6 bytes. UTF-8 is typically used for European language documents, as most characters can be represented by a single byte. For languages with a large number of non-Latin characters (eg. Japanese), **UTF-16** is usually more efficient.

UTF-16

An encoding scheme for representing each **Unicode** character as a sequence of 16-bit values (usually just one such value is sufficient). UTF-16 documents normally begin with a special byte order mark which identifies both the encoding and the order in which the originating machine has placed the constituent bytes. UTF-16 is typically used in non-European language documents, where there can be a significant size reduction compared to **UTF-8**.

value

A value is a string of text which can be interpreted as a number or **measure**. TopLeaf stores values internally as integers.

variable

A named area in which TopLeaf can store **strings** or **values** to be used in calculations or put back into the **input stream** at some later point.

W3C

[The World Wide Web Consortium](#) is a group of representatives of leading companies and other Web professionals that sanctions Web related standards such as [XML](#), [XSLT](#) etc.

warning

An abnormal condition arising during typesetting which may lead to some source material being incorrectly rendered (e.g. attempt to set a margin outside the column boundary). See also [error](#) and [fatal error](#).

whitespace

In *XML input*, those non-printing characters ([newline](#), space, tab) which serve to separate words in the text. How whitespace is handled by TopLeaf depends on the [content model](#) of the current [element](#), and is also affected by settings such as [interword space](#). In an *output document*, any horizontal space between words or vertical space between lines.

widows and orphans

A widow line occurs when the first line of a paragraph stands alone at the end of a column or page, with the rest of the paragraph rendered at the top of the following column or page. A similar situation occurs when the last line of a paragraph stands alone at the top of a new column or page. This is known as an orphan line. Widow and orphan lines can also occur if column footnotes are permitted to split across a column or page boundary.

word break character

One of a configurable set of characters after which a word can be broken.. By default the only such character is the hyphen, but other characters (such as ampersand) can also be designated for word breaking.

XML

[eXtensible Markup Language](#): a subset of [SGML](#), sanctioned by the [W3C](#), which removes much of the complexity of the older standard, while allowing the development of a number of associated standards and tools. Has largely replaced SGML as the standard of choice.

XML hierarchy

The arrangement of [elements](#) within an [XML](#) document in which every element (other than the topmost) is completely contained within exactly one parent element, and may contain zero or more child elements.

XSL-FO

[XSL Formatting Objects](#) are a form of [markup](#), sanctioned by the [W3C](#), in which partially processed documents can be stored prior to final rendering. Since TopLeaf processes [source material](#) directly, it has no need of an intermediate form of the document.

XSLT

[XSL Transforms](#) are a form of [markup](#), sanctioned by the [W3C](#), in which specifications for document [transforms](#) can be written. TopLeaf has a number of facilities for re-ordering and converting portions of the [source document](#) during processing, so a separate transform step is not usually required. However, in the event that a radical transformation is necessary, it is possible to use XSLT (or similar tools) on the document before passing it to TopLeaf.